# An Introduction to the <br> <br> Arahie language 

 <br> <br> Arahie language}

## ISLAMIC <br> TEXTS




Revised 2nd Edition

An Introduction to the Arahic language ISLAMIC TEXTS

## About the Author

Syed Iqbal Zaheer is a well-known Saudia-based Indian scholar. Although an engineer by profession (now a consultant), his main field of study has been a variety of Islamic disciplines. His most important contribution is Ishraq al-Ma'ani, which is a unique quintessence of Qur'anic commentaries. Designed to be in 14 volumes, its 12 volumes have been published while the 13 th will go to the press soon. He has 10 other publications to his credit, some of which have seen multiple reprints in India, Saudi Arabia and Canada(North America). He has been editing the monthly young muslim digest since almost three decades.

## About the Book

This book is the painstaking result of two decades of research, study and application. Its unique quality is that starting with the alphabets, it takes the student in easy 90 steps right up to the classical writings of Qurtubi, Ibn Taymiyyah, Ghazali, Sayyid Qutb and others. Never before an Arabic course has had such variety of material under one program. It is already in use as a course-book in several Islamic centers and one institution in India.

## This Package is truly incomparable

## The Package

The DVD included with this book has some unique features. It contains:

* Audio explanations of the book's lessons
* The famous 20 -volume Arabic-Arabic Lisan al-Arab dictionary in 2 electronic formats, in edition to the book's own glossaries
* 5 valuable Arabic books on Arabic grammar in electronic format + one work on power point.
* 1 Arabic-English Dictionary in Electronic format + 1 Qur'anic Arabic-English Dictionary
* An Arabic software, covering major Qur'anic commentaries and Hadith collections
* 3 Stories in Arabic in Power Point format
* 5 Audio Speeches in pure Arabic accent and,
* 6 songs for children - in addition to all 90 lessons in PDF format

N
$\mathcal{A} n$ Introduction to the

# Arabic Language 

## Through

## Islamic Texts

(Vol.1)

By
Syed Iqbal Zafeer

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { المذل! } \\
& \text { اللغة العـ.سة } \\
& \text { عنطهق } \\
& \text { النصوص الإسلامية } \\
& \text { (الجزءالأول) } \\
& \text { تألفنوإعداد } \\
& \text { سيدإبقالظهي }
\end{aligned}
$$

## © All rights reserved

No part of this publication may be reproduced in any from or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording by any information storage and retrieval system, without written permission of the publisher.

| Title | $:$ | An Introduction to the Arabic Language <br> Through Islamic Text |
| :--- | :---: | :--- |
| Author | $\vdots$ | Syed labal Zaheer |
| Copyright | $\vdots$ | All rights reserved |
| Printed | 2010 |  |
| Printing supervised by | $\vdots$ | M. R. Attique |
| Second edition printed by: | Printed at Toronto - Canada <br> Al-Homaidhi Printing Press Riyadh K. S. A. |  |

© Al-Attique Publishers Inc. Canada 2010

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { ISBN: 978- 9960-9853-4-3 } \\
\text { 2an Edition: } & 2010
\end{array}
$$

Dar - Al- Hadyan Publisher \& Distributors P.O. Box: 15031 Riyadh 11444

Tel: 966 -1-461-3911 F: 966 -1- 463-1685
E-mail: daralhadivan@yahoo.com

| Distributed in Pakistan by: | Distributed in USA by: |
| :---: | :---: |
| Al-Attique Publishers | Dar- us- salam Book Shop |
| Ismaeel Centre | 486 Atlantic Ave |
| 110- Chatergee Road, Urdu Bazar | N. Y. 11217 |
| Lahore 54000 Pakistan | Tel: $+1(718) 6255925$ |
| Cell: +923334264878 | Fax: $+1(718) 6251511$ |
| Tel: $+9242796-2895$ |  |

Published by:
Al-Attique Publishers Inc. Canada
11 Progress Ave Unit No \# 07 Scarborough ON M1P 457
Tel: 416-335-1179 Fax: 416-335-1145, Toll Free: 1-888-235-1179
E-mail: al-attique@alattique.com Website: www.al-attique.com

## الفَهرَس

(contents)

الجزء الأول<br>(Volume One)

## صفتحة



رقم
الدرس
ro النكرة و المعرفة (The Definitive and the Infinitive)

المضاف والمضاف اليه (Construct/Genitive) ..... V
$\varepsilon r$\&9

Introductory Notes (The Alphabets) الحروف حروف العلة/الحر كات، و غيرها (Vowels, Diacritical Marks, , etc.) (Noun, Verb, Particle) اسمّ، فعل، حرف Y(ب) (ت) Yeading Practice) (ترين القراءة تمرين الكتابة (Writing Practice) $r$ تُرين الكتابة (Writing Practice) $\varepsilon$ (Writing Practice) ©

| 00 | التذكير والتأنيث (Masculine \& Feminine) | 9 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 74 | الضمائر (Personal Pronouns) | $1 \cdot$ |
| Vo | أسماء الإشارة (Demonstrative Nouns) | 11 |
| 11 | الكلمات من، ما، وغيرها | Ir |
| $\wedge 9$ | حروف الجر | 19 |
| 9 V | نواصب الاسم |  |
| 99 | النعت والمنعوت (Adjectives) | 10 |
| 1.0 | ليس/ب/أي\|كل | 17 |
| 111 | ظرف المكان | 1 V |
| 110 | الماضي-1 (Past Tense - Active) | 11 |
| Irr | r-الماضي | 19 |
| $1 r 9$ | r-الماضي | Y. |
| 179 | (Present and Future Tense-Active) (-1 | YI |
| 100 | r- المضار | Yr |
| 17 | الماضي والمضار ع | Yr |
| 179 | الأمر | $r \varepsilon$ |
| (The Imperative and the Negative Imperative - Second Person) |  |  |
| $1 \vee 9$ | النهي (The Negative Imperative) | Yo |
| 1^0 | الفاعل والمفول به (The Subject and the Object) | YY |
| 191 | تكرينات | YV |
| r.l | اسم الفاعل (Active Participle) | rı |
| r.q | اسم المفعول (Passive Participle) | rq |
| PIV | تصاريف اسم الفاعل واسم المفعل (Conjugations) | $r$. |


| rro | اسم التفضيل(Comparative \& Superlative Degrees) | rl |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| rro | المثن (Dual Nouns) | rr |
| $r$ ¢q | المبتدأ واللخبر | $r$ |
| rov | الماضي المحهل (The Passive Verb: Past Tense) | $\Gamma \varepsilon$ |
| YTV | المضار ع البهول (Passive: Present \& Future Tense) | ro |
| rVV | الأفعال الضِّفة (The Doubled Verbs) | $r 7$ |
| rar | المهوز (Hamzated Verbs) | rv |
| $r \cdot r$ | نواصب الفعل المضار | rN |
| r. 9 | جوازم الفعل المضارع | $r q$ |
| miv | مثال | $\varepsilon \cdot$ |
| rrv | أجوف واوي (Hollow Verbs) | \&1 |
| rrv | (do) أحوف يائي | $\varepsilon Y$ |
| $r$ ¢ | (do) ناقص واوي | $\varepsilon r$ |
| rov | (do) ناقص يائي |  |
| \% | المثني، جمع المذكر السالم و جمع المؤنث السالم | \&0 |
|  | الجزء الثالي <br> (Volume Two) |  |
| rVV | كلمات: أتى، رأى | \&7 |
| rıV | كلمات: شاء، جاء، | \&V |
| rqu | العلد | \&^ |
| $\varepsilon \cdot 0$ | كان وأخواهًا | \&9 |

そい
\＆19

ErV
$\varepsilon \upharpoonright q$
を \＆V
EOH
$\varepsilon 79$
をヘV
0.0

011
01 V

OYI
oro
org
001
009
OVI
O NV
094
$7 \cdot r$
7.9
(Nouns of Place and Instrument)


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. } 0 \\
& 0101 \\
& \text { or اسمم المكان، اسم الآلة والظرف }
\end{aligned}
$$

| 719 | الفضيل بن عياض／عمر بن عبدالعزيز | V1 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| TrV | نُشأةُ المكتبات／هل جل جز آء الإحسان | vr |
| arv | ههز تا الوصل والقطع／الصياد المسكين | Vr |
| gor | اللـتِّنى | V $\varepsilon$ |
| 77\％ | الحال／المروء | vo |
| 7Vo | التمـــــــز／عسى أن تكرهوا | V7 |
| 79r | العطف | vV |
| v．l | المسر حية الإسلامية | VA |
| viv | أثر الحضارة الإسلامية | v9 |
| Vrr | أفعال الاستمرار／ما دام／عاللكير | $\wedge$ ． |
| vrr | الفعول المطلق／الفعول لأجله／حيلة إلة أديب | $\wedge 1$ |
| vra |  | NY |
| vor | أبو حامد الغزالي：الزهد | Nr |
| vav | الوصايا والمواعظ | 人乏 |
| vro | الشعر الإسلامي | 10 |
| v＾o | شرح المديث | 人7 |
| n．r | صفحات من تفسير القرطي | NV |
| NrV | جميع الحروف／بدون الألف／العقيدة الطحبحاوية | $\wedge$ |
| nor | منتخبات من كتب الأصول | 19 |
| 179 | الأسلوب البديد：سيد قطب | 9. |
| 人10 | （Glossary：Arabic－English）القاموس：عربي－إبغليزي | ق |
| 910 | القاموس：إبلليز－عربي（Glossary：English Arabic） | ق |

## INTRODUCTORY NOTES

## A Revealed Language!?

Earnest Renan (1823-1894) carried out an extensive research on Semitic languages. He wrote the following in one of his books: "The Arabic language is the most astonishing event of human history. Unknown during the classical period, it suddenly emerged as a complete language. After this, it did not undergo any noticeable change."
That the language did not undergo any change is clearly attributable to the Qur'an, which, happening to be of such literary order as impossible for any human to imitate, arrested the possibility of any decline. But, how are we to explain the appearance of a language which has such a perfect structure, among a people, spread over vast stretches of deserts, who were unaware of the art of writing? Through and through, a student will be puzzled by this question. Some scholars have suggested therefore, that this could be a revealed language.

## Structure

It will surprise many to know that Arabic language, admittedly quite difficult at the start, is much easier to master than many other languages, including English. A child enters into a nursery and, studying throughout in English, finishes college in another 18 years. During this long course he studies hundreds of books on a variety of subjects, all in English. Yet, after graduation he cannot write an article in English without errors (Englishmen not excluded). In contrast, if someone were to devote half that time to learning Arabic, he might become a literary master. This is because Arabic, of which Hebrew is an off-shoot, (a fact of little mention in scholarly works, if ever) is a highly structured language. Once a student has understood its structure, his learning becomes simpler and faster. This is why some Madrasas in the Indian sub-continent make children memorize the structure in the manner of multiplication tables. Thereafter, all they need to do is to learn new words. Each newly learnt word adds dozens more to the vocabulary without any additional effort. This explains why writers who spent their lives entirely in the Indian subcontinent, produced scholarly works in Arabic that are read in the Arab world for their literary qualities.
Interestingly, it is the structure which happens to be the main reason why Arabic proves difficult to learn, especially in the early stages. Although the said structure is constructed logically, minds that are not used to any such thing in other languages, find it hard to come to terms with. But of course persistence pays.

## Infusing Interest

With the above difficulty in mind, I have tried to maintain, or perhaps provoke, the student's interest, especially in the earlier lessons, by introducing surprise sentences, short stories, anecdotes, humor, puns and even one or two taunting expressions that smack of prejudice. Obviously, no offence is intended.
Example sentences of the earliest lessons might sound somewhat unorthodox. This is because I have tried to avoid any grammatical construction that the student would not have learnt earlier. They will sound more complete as lessons advance. Also, in later stages I have taken the liberty not to restrict myself to words or sentences directly related to the lesson under study; some of the sentences quoted in examples, or those placed in exercises, might belong to lessons previously done, or may have word-constructions not yet done by the student. But, of course, in most cases the student has the meaning before him stated close by.

## Sources

This book grew out of course material that this writer had been collecting since two decades and a half to help him conduct Arabic classes. But since, until quite recently, there was no idea of a book, the sources of the hundreds of passages that have gone into making these volumes were not always recorded. An added difficulty now is that the concerned books are scattered over two continents and several libraries. Therefore, though regretfully, much of the contents will have to go without acknowledgement of the sources. One of the sources from which I took some passages (Al-Qasas al-Adabiyyah...) was discovered in a library in India, but which does not carry the name of the compiler or publisher.

## Textual Selections

To learn the Arabic language for this-worldly purposes is to keep a cow for its dung. The effort has been to use words from the Qur'an, Hadith, and Islamic literature. Accordingly, examples from the Qur'an and hadith abound. The Qur'anic chapter and verse numbers have not been cited to prevent a student from locating the texts and get the meaning out.

## Hadith

Hadith selections, obviously chosen for the sake of a single word pertaining to the lesson at hand, have been mostly made from Suyuti's six volume "Faid al-Qadir" with notes by Munawi. One advantage is that the authenticity is stated there against every hadith. (I have not taken anything of lesser status than hasan, if any. So all are trustworthy). The choices had another point in mind: such ahadith as are not
commonly known so that the student is surprised by the statement.

## Translations

Translations into English are entirely by this writer, except for three passages. Two of them were adopted for no other reason but ease and want of time. A third translation (Sayyid Qutb's commentary) was taken for its excellence. My thanks are in any case due to Franz Rosenthal \& N. J. Dawood (lesson 82), Dr. `Abdul Haq Ansari (lesson 89), and `Adil Salahi \& A.A. Shamis (lesson 90) - whose translations I have reproduced.
Yet, there is an advantage in taking these three translations from others. The student may notice how free translations and abridgements are done. On my part I have tried to be verbal throughout the lessons. Even where the sentence structure had to be modified for idiomatic reasons, I have endeavored to maintain the word order in the translation to correspond with the Arabic texts.

## Selection Criteria

An objective of a certain class of writers of Arabic grammar works and anthologies has been to conceal true Islamic literature from Western public. Their books are adorned with examples that can be described as grotesque. One such work by a respected Arabist offers the story of a wine-trader as the very first example of Arabic writing! Fearful of Islam's penetration into their lands, they artfully create an entirely false image of the Arabs, their life, culture, and literature. (This is also true of some of the recent books of the Arab world where the elites are at war with their Islamic legacy. They do not distort, but tend to be secular).
I have tried to create a truer picture. But I suppose these volumes are not sufficient to cover the variety, richness or the brilliance. Yet, it might be added that literary output is a mirror of a people's faith, outlook, attitudes and culture. A frank and honest approach to life, coupled with the well-known goodness of heart (which keeps much prejudice at bay), creates a robust and an entirely inartificial culture among the Arabs. I hope its shadow can be traced in these pages.
Some eyebrows might be raised at the exclusion of a few renowned writers both contemporary as well as of the past. But, after all, this is not an anthology.
The dominating idea in the selection of the texts has been to cover as many literary genres as possible. The lessons containing Qur'an and Hadith commentary, or Hadith and Fiqh principles, might be difficult to grasp. But that is what a student of Islam will encounter, when he decides to study the disciplines on his own. In addition, they are meant to impress how Islamic sciences primarily rest on reason and logic. While translating these lessons, I have tried to bring out the point, rather
than maintain the word order.
It is hoped that if someone does these ninety lessons, he or she should be able to comprehend any Arabic writing of the الفـصحى (al-fus-haa: pure) class. Modern journalistic Arabic will need additional reading.

## The DVD

The first point of importance is that the student will do well to make a copy of the extremely useful DVD being supplied with this work.
The accompanying DVD contains a folder called Records. This has the audio explanations covering the lessons of this book. Another folder is called Electronic Materials which has soft copies of several books, a few software, and some speeches and children's songs.

## 1. Records

## 1a. The Audio Explanations

The need for a teacher is greater in Arabic than in other languages, especially at the earlier stages. It is expected that the grammatical notes provided at the beginning of every lesson, and the recorded explanations, should largely do away with the need.
These recordings were done over several years, in several places, using several computer software, several recording gadgets, but never the true professional equipments fitted into sound proof rooms. The student will have to put up with the poor quality. My hope is that one day someone will re-read the explanations in a proper accent, and get it recorded using professional equipments. In the meanwhile, I am to learn that a computer software called "Sound Forge" version 8 , is quite capable of improving badly recorded sounds.

Some discrepancies will be noticed between the written lessons and the recorded explanation. This is because, apart from several revisions, shuffling of the texts within the lessons, and, additions and deletions were made much after the explanations were recorded. The student is begged excuse for the confusion that might be encountered in some places. A precautionary note is that if any discrepancy is noted between the recorded and the written, then the written is the final authority.
It may also be noted that not all lessons have audio explanations. Basically, where the lessons do not introduce grammatical rules, or the grammatical rules are clearly stated, then, audio explanation was not thought necessary.
Errata: As you open explanations for lesson nos. 77, 80, 81 and 87 you will hear reference to wrong lesson numbers. Ignore them. This is because these lessons were
shifted and numbers changed after the recordings.

## 1b. Speeches \& Songs

The speeches included are to familiarize the student with the language as it is spoken in the الفـصحى style, which is not so very common to hear. Those who use
language while delivering talks or sermons are few in thousands. Hence, the additional criteria - that the topics should be of wide interest - could not be observed. Yet, and although they are all extempore speeches, they do carry some material of interest.
A few simple songs have also been included. Music being strongly frowned upon by Islam, a new type of songs for children has developed in our times which has religious approval for being free of music, and containing unobjectionable material. (Those that invoke resistance to occupying forces are, for instance, considered objectionable, as also those that float ideas foreign to Islam). In Arabic they are known as أناثــــــ (anaasheed: songs) and are popular among the religiously oriented. Those included in the DVD might not be the best of the thousands circulating around. Like the speeches, they have also been chosen at random, clarity of expression being the criteria.

## 2. The Electronic Material

There are three folders in this folder:

## 2a. Grammar Books

In view of the needs of students in such parts of the world where Arabic books are not easily available, a few books have been included in electronic form. They can be directly opened by clicking on their icons, provided of course, the computer has the software: Power Point and any PDF reader. The students are advised to browse through the four grammar books every now and then, especially after about 65 lessons of this course has been done. The explanations in these books will enhance the ability to understand the lessons they are doing.
Wright's book in English A Grammar of the Arabic Language, will require patience but will be found to be useful.
Apart from what is presented in this DVD, a student might refer to other books suchas: one prepared by Dr. M.A. Haq Ansari: Learning the Language of the Qur'an (MMI Publishers, India - mmipub@nda.vsnl.net.in). Another is the voluminous $A$ new Arabic Grammar by J. A. Haywood and H. M. Nahmad (Lund

Humphries, London).
2b. A folder called "Qasas" has the story of the Prophets in power point.
2c. "Al-Maktabah al-Shamela" is a very useful Arabic software. It has got hundreds of books that can be either read or used for researched purposes. It has several dictionaries too, including English to Arabic (from Muhaddith.com).

Note: Your computer should run on Windows-xp home edition or Vista. It should be Arabic enabled. In addition, Arabic should have been chosen as the "advanced language" option. To enable, do the following in Windows-xp:
Click on Start/Control Panel/Regional Options/Advanced Options.
Choose Arabic (Saudi Arabia) as the language option. There is no need to customize it.
Go back to Regional and Language Options/Click on Details.
Click the boxes for Show the additional language bar on the desktop and Show Additional Language bar on the task bar.
Click on Apply and quit.
Re-start your computer.
Without the above options, you might not be able use Al-Maktabah al-Shamela
Choosing the above options in Vista is somewhat complicated. Seek help from the Internet.

## 3. Glossaries

## 3a.Lisan al-Arab

This directory contains the whole of the 20 -volume Lisan al-Arab in html format.
This is from Arabic to Arabic. Each file represents a volume. Just clicking the icon opens the file. To search a particular word, use the directions given below under "Using Arabic Dictionaries."
The "Find" option works in this format also. Press "Ctrl +f " to get the search menu, enter the word, click OK, and the cursor rests on the first find.
3b. A second PDF file is "A Dictionary of Modern Written Arabic" by Hans Wehr. This is Arabic to English, and quite a comprehensive dictionary of current words but not useful for religious words. For classical words, one will have to use Lisan al-Arab.
3c. "A Dictionary and Glossary of the Koran" by Penrice is also Arabic to English in PDF and very useful for Qur'an students. It covers every verb of the Qur'an.
3d. Two other "Qamus" Word-files have the same dictionaries that are found at the end of this book, but in electronic format

## Using Arabic Dictionaries

Arabic dictionaries enter words under their roots, which are of course placed in alphabetical order. Thus, any word - unless a triliteral or quadriliteral root - cannot be directly looked for in an Arabic classical dictionary. To give an example, if one is looking for the word , it will not be found under $\rho$. But rather, one will have to first determine the root of مسجد . In this particular case $p$ happens to be an additional letter and is the root. It is under مستد that will be found, as also all other words derived from this particular root.
To take another example, if one is looking for the meaning of إستْتُفْر he will not find it under 1 . But rather, all additional letters will have to be removed to arrive at the root. In this case the additional consonants sare 1 , س, , and I, and the root we are left with is غَفَر . غ غ استغفر can be found.

The above holds good for dictionaries produced in our times; many of which are, being small, quite inadequate. The larger, eight-volume Arabic-English Lexicon by Edward William Lane (London, Lebanon), though comprehensive, but which follows the modern pattern, offers other difficulties and is quite confusing.

With classical Arabic dictionaries, we encounter a difficulty. From the point of view of certain advantages, entries in classical Arabic dictionaries are placed following double alphabetical order. Both the first and the last letters of the root words are taken into account, and placed alphabetically. The indexing is first by the last letter of the root; and then contents of each letter are indexed alphabetically. An example will help:

The word سَجَدَ cannot be found under سut rather, سخد ends with د ; therefore, ستد will be found under د ; but not directly. Instead, as one opens the section د of the dictionary, he should proceed to look for the first letter of ستد in the alphabetical order. In this case $\quad$ is the first letter. Thus, after opening the section $د$ one may start from 1 (still under د ), and go down looking for all those words that start with , (and of course, that end with د), until he finds ستجد.
It could be slightly confusion at the first try. But with a few trials, it becomes all too easy.
Thus, either case, some amount of structural knowledge is necessary to use an Arabic dictionary, whether modern or classical.
On my part I have provided a glossary that shows all words, including the derived forms, in direct alphabetical order. Thus, استغفر will be found under I.

## On Line Help

The Institute of Higher Learning (c/o Girls' Vocational Training Inst., G.M.S. School, Madinah Shadi Mahal Road, Hassan-573 201, Karnataka, India, e-mail: gvti hassan@yahoo.co.in) offers free academic services to students from all over the world. It can be referred to if difficulties are encountered during study of this course. It also evaluates exercise sheets if sent: either by post or e-mail.
It can also be reached through its sister organizations e.g., ymd@bgl.vsnl.net.in or, ltrs_editorymd@rediffmail. It is also expected that the entire material will be available on the Net, at www.youngmuslimdigest.com, hopefully with some sort of interactive help facility.
Wa Allahu'l musta`an, wa 'alayhi'l tuklan.

## Acknowledgments

Apart from my children, my thanks are especially due to brothers Mirza Nasrullah Baig and `Abdul `Aziz Sa`di (both of the "King Fahd University of Petroleum and Minerals," Dhahran). It was their inexhaustible patience in the face of never ending corrections, as they spent endless hours before the computers that made this publication appear much earlier than it would have been without their assistance. I am also grateful to Dr. Sulaiman (of the Institute of Higher Learning, Bangalore) for the initial proof-reading. A special word of thanks is due to brother `Abd alNoor al-Daylami of Algeria, now in Riyadh. He truly has a sharp eye. Finally, brothers Dr. Ahmad Sayyid (of Egypt), Abu Hudhayfah Muhammad Salman (Darul Qabas, Riyadh), and br. M.R. Attique (Canada) deserve special thanks for the painstaking manner in which they proof-read the manuscript and removed the errors invisible to my eyes.
A special word of thanks is due to br. Naseer Ahmad Shareef (KFUPM-Dhahran), who pointed out with remarkable diligence dozens of typo and other errors before this second print could go to the press.
May Allah reward every one of the above in great measure.

## Syed Iqbal Zaheer

Dammam
April 2009

$$
\text { درس - } 1
$$

## المروف العربيـــــة

THE ARABIC ALPHABET

| Names of the letters | Isolated form | Form when joined to |  |  | Trans－ cription |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Preced- } \\ & \text { ing } \\ & \text { letter } \end{aligned}$ | Preced－ ing and Succeed－ ing letter | Succeed－ ing letter only |  |
| ＇الفت＇alif | 1 | L | － | － | ã |
| بَاءٌ bã | ب | ب | $\div$ | － | b |
| تَاءّ tã＇ | $\because$ | ت | 工 | ت | t |
| ثاءً thã＇ | ث | $\stackrel{3}{4}$ | ̇ | $\pm$ | th |
| حيمّ jïm | ج | ج | $\rightarrow$ | $\rightarrow$ | j |
| خَاء hãa | $\tau$ | て | 二 | $\sim$ | h |
| خَاءٌ khã＇ | $\dot{\text { خ }}$ | خ | خ | خ | kh |
| دَالٌ dãl | $د$ | 2 | － | － | d |
| ذالٌ dhãl | ذ | i | － | － | dh |
| ¢رَ rã | $J$ | $\checkmark$ | － | － | r |
| ز＇انی | j | ز | － | － | z |
| سبِّ | س | س | － | س | S |
| شُينٌ shïn | ش | ش | ش | \％ | sh |


| Names of the letters | Isolated form | Form when joined to |  |  | Trans－ cription |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Preced－ ing letter | Preced－ ing and Succeed－ ing letter | Succeed－ ing letter only |  |
| صنادٌ sãad | ص | ص | － | صـ | S |
| ضّدّد | ض | ض | ض | ض | d |
| طاء tã＇ | b | b | b | ط | t |
| ظاء ${ }^{\text {zã }}$ | ظ | ظ | غ | ظ | z |
| عَنْن | $\varepsilon$ | c | 2 | ع | ع＇＇ |
| غِّنِّ | $\dot{\text { غ }}$ | غ | غ | غ | gh |
| فاء ${ }^{\text {¢ }}$ | ف | ف | ف | فـ | f |
| قاف qãf | قٌ | قا | 玉 | قـ | q |
| كافن kãf | ك | ↔ | ك ك | 5 | k |
| ¢لا | ل | $\downarrow$ | $\perp$ | 」 | 1 |
| ميزم mïm | P | r | $\sim$ | － | m |
| نونْ nũn | ن | ن | － | － | n |
| هَاءٌ hã＇ | $\bigcirc$ | a | $\square$ | ه | h |
| واوّ wãw | و | 9 | － | － | $\begin{gathered} \mathrm{w}(\tilde{\mathrm{u}}, \\ \mathrm{aw}, \mathrm{au}) \end{gathered}$ |
| بَاء ${ }^{\text {chã }}$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\cdots$ | － | $\begin{gathered} y(i, \\ \text { ay, ai) } \end{gathered}$ |
|  | ¢ | 1 | $\dot{\text {－}}$ | － | ， |
|  | ＇${ }^{\prime}$＇i | g |  |  |  |
| تَاءٌ مربوطة tã | \％ | む |  |  | t |


(Vowels, diacritical marks, etc.)

## Explanation:

[As pointed out in the introduction to this book, the first point to be noted is that the explanatory voice-recordings that accompany these lessons were recorded extempore, while the lessons have undergone modifications. Therefore, if any difference is noted between what is recorded and what is written, then, the written is the final authority].

Perhaps you should start by learning a word of common usage. It is
 (pronounced: "mathalun"), meaning "an example." Its plural is أَمِّْْلة" (amthilatun = examples). میثال" ("mithaalun") would also mean, "an example". And, "مَتُ

This lesson explains to you some of the basic things. If you have access to our recorded explanation, it might help. Otherwise, a few close readings will remove many doubts that remain after the first reading.

1. There are three long and three short vowels in Arabic language: I ("alif"), g (waaw) and ("yaa").

| Long vowels | ي | , | 1 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

2. So also, there are three short vowels called: "dammah", "fat-ha" and "kasrah".
The short vowels are also known as "harakah" (pl. harakaat). They are as follows. Their pronunciation (transliteration) is given in brackets:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ( }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ([sadaqa]- He spoke the truth) }
\end{aligned}
$$

3. When a vowel is repeated, then it is said to be in nunative state (nunation). It must be pronounced as "un" (where there are two "dammaas"), "an" (where there are two "fat-has") and "in" (where there are two "kasraas").
د- تَنْوِيْنٌ (nunation) (tanveenun) مَثَلاً: "بُ|بًاب" أبٌ

Transliteration: (bun, ban, bin, abun, aban, abin).
4. Absence of a "harakah" is termed as "sukoon." (Its sign is called as "jazm").

(kizbun - a lie) (sidqun: truth)
5. How are "waaw" and "yaa" pronounced when they fall between other letters? Note the pronunciation within brackets:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { س- "و" مَثَلا: كَوْنٌ ("kawnun" - the world) ("roohun" - Soul) (") } \\
& \text { (" أبوْ ("abu"- father) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ("abi" - my father) }
\end{aligned}
$$

6. In the light of above, it can be said that a word - with reference to the "harakah" it carries - can be in one of the three conditions: with a "dammah" (or two dammas), with a "fat-ha," (or two fat-has), or with a "kasrah" (or two kasras).
When it has a "dammah" (or two) it is referred to be "marfoo". That is, in the state of "raf"


When it has a "fat-ha" (or two) it is referred to be "mansoob." That is, in the state of "nasab."

مَنْصُوْبٌ / مَفْتُوحٌ - مَثَلاً: إن اللَّ (inna'Allaha إنْ أباً (innaban)
When it has a "jarr" [kasrah] (or two) it is called "majroor." That is, in the state of "jarr."
مَجْرُورْ - مَشَلاً: مِنَ الْباب (mina'l baabi) مِنْ باب (min baabin)

Finally, In the absence of the "harakaat", it is called as "majzoom." That is, in the state of "jazm."
مَجْزُوُمٌ - مَثَلا: مِنْ (min- from)
7. When two letters appear consequently in any word (such as in English word "added" in which there are two d's side by side), then in Arabic, they remove one and to indicate that the letter is repeated, a is added mark on top - called "shaddah." It is like a little " $w$."
The word which has "shaddah" is known as the "mushaddad word."
 صَدَّقَ (saddaqa - he testified to truth)
8. Some nouns end with a "yaa" ( $\mathcal{N}$ ) at the end of the word. They are considered as having an "alif maqsoorah" (lit. a short "alif"). Note the pronunciation given in bracket.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ( } \\
& \text { الألِكفُ المَقْصُوْرْة - مَثَالً: لَيْلى (Lala - A female's name) }
\end{aligned}
$$

9. Then there some nouns that have a long "alif". Its pronouncement should be elongated. They are known "alif mamdoodah" (lit. the elongated "alif"). It is written with a sign on its head, specific to it (i)

Finally (at last!), something about Arabic numerals. You should learn to recognize them. The list is below. Of course, while writing them you run your pen from right to left, from up to down.

Twenty one ..... Y
Two hundred and thirty-five ..... rHo
درس-Y(ب)

## إِمْ، فِعْل، حَرْفِّ <br> (Noun, Verb, Article)

## Notes:


 verbs, are articles.
Some of the "huroof" affect the "harakaat" of the words that follow them. They are known as "adawaat" ( أَدَوات ), sing, "adaat" ( أداة ).

| (Examples) (أمثلة | جمع | Meaning |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| الكلّهُ , مُحَمَّدٌ , آسَدٌ | أَسْمَاءٌ | Noun | إسمّ |
| He wrote | أفعال" | Verb | فِعْلِ |
|  فت (Then, therefore, so) | حُروفٌ | Article | حرْفٌ |

تَترْمِنْ
(Reading Practice)













أَبَبًا أَحَحُ أَحَذَ أَذِنَ أَمَرَ ََنَا بَخِلَ بَرَرَةٍ جَعَلَ جَمَعَ





 زُوْا زِيْ طَا طُوْا طِي ظَا ظُوْا ظِيْ فَا فُوْا فِيْ هَا هُ هُوْا

## 

هِيْ يَا يُوْا ِِيْ ْ َاوْا إِيْ جَا جُوْوا جِسِيْ دَا دُوْا دِيْ ذَا

ضُوْا ضِيْ عَا عُوْا عِيْ غَا غُوْا غِيْ ِيْ قَا قُوْا قِيْ كَا كَا كُوْا
كِيْ لاَ كُوْا لِيْ مَا مُوْا مِيْنَ نَا نُوْا نِيْ وَا وُوْا وِيْ

تَوْ تَيْ تَوْ تَـَيْ دَوْ دَيْ ذَوْ ذَيْ رَوْ رَيْ زَوْ زَيْ سَوْ سَيْ شَوْ شَيْ صَوْ صَيْ ضَوْ ضَيْ طَوْ طَيْ ظَوْ ظَيْ
 نَيْ عَوْ عَيْ غَوْ غَيْ فَوْ فَيْ قَوْ قَيْ كَوْ كَيْ مَوْ مَيْ وَوْ وَيْ هَوْ هَيْ يَوْ بَيْ

 رجَالٌّ مَلِكٍ شَىی طَغَى طَغَوْا طَيرًا عَادٍ عَلى عَينْ فِيْهِ


 حِسَابًا سُبَاتًا سِرَاجًا سَلْمٌ شِدَادًا شَرَابًا صَوْبًا طَعَــامِا عَذَابًا عَطَاء غِثَاء كِتَابًا كِرَامًا لِبَاسًا لِسَانًا مَئابًا مَتَاعًا





## Lesson-3


 جد

يد
J
J
$\nu$


山
J
$\nu$
د


س

$\qquad$
$\qquad$

دen $x$ \& $\mathcal{E}$
uex $x$ ع b
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
ن ق ك ك ك ك ف ق ك ك ك ك
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$

ل ل د يـ ل
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
ज ل $\gamma$ نis i $\leqslant$ V $\gamma$ i i s $\dot{\sim}$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$9 \wedge \vee 70 \varepsilon r r 1$
$9 \wedge \vee 10$ \& r r 1
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
t $\omega \quad \gamma$ -
 وَما هِنْ يدٍ
$\qquad$
$\qquad$

Lesson - $\varepsilon$

$\qquad$

$\qquad$
$\qquad$


-     -         - 



$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$

$$
\forall, \dot{\sim}, \dot{-}
$$

طويلِ
سَبْنَا
النَّهُهـارِ
في
$\sqrt{5}$
إنَّ

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 0 \\
& \text { Y }
\end{aligned}
$$

## $\rightarrow$



إنَّ خيرَ مَن استأجرتَ القويٌٌ الأمينُ

ー 多 ※ お و リ
\＆ 0 ，
Tしゃ～

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { - } \\
& \text { يَنُ اسِهِ }
\end{aligned}
$$


_ 2 -
_ل



1 -



ل 1


$\qquad$
$\qquad$

## Lesson-5


隹 أ



ر






## ـ <br> 

كَبْ عَلَّيْ حَرْنَا صِزْ سَرْ عْمَني
$\qquad$





$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
رُبَ زَ
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$

-     - H


$\qquad$



$\qquad$


## -9)

$-1$ بيز


$\qquad$
$\qquad$

4
 $\rightarrow$ al
 Coly

#  

男$\qquad$
$\qquad$



$\qquad$
$\qquad$

## Rules:

We have learnt that there are three kinds of words in Arabic: Nouns, verbs and articles. (Article is every word that is neither noun nor verb).
Now, nouns in their origin always come in the infinitive form ("nakirah" in Arabic. To express the form, it carries two "dammas." E.g., رَحُل ("rajulun") meaning "a man." It is infinitive because "a man" is unknown, and can be of infinite qualities and attributes. It can be any man: white man, brown man, tall man, Arab man, lame man, and so on.
But when you say "the man" in English, then, you have a particular "man" in mind, and the listener also knows "who" the man you are referring to. The two of you know who the man is. It has to be a specific man. So, "the man" is a definitive noun.
To go back, every noun in Arabic is originally in infinitive form. How to make it definitive? ("ma 'rifah" in Arabic). Simple. Add an ل ("alif" and "laam") to the noun, and remove one "harakah" out of the two "harakas". (That is, out of the two "dammas", you remove one "dammah." Thus, رَجُل (meaning "a man") becomes 'الرُّحُل " (meaning, "the man").


| (New |  |  |  | الْكَلِمَاتُ الْجَدِيَدةُ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| No | V | Yes | نَعْمْ | Interrogative | هَلْ |
| Or | أَوْ | And | ' | Then, hence, so therefore, etc. | فَ |

> ( - -الُّكِرةُ وانْعْرِفَة)

الأَمْثْلَةُ：

| المعرفة |  | النكرة |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| （The）book | آلْكِتَابِ＊ | （a）Book | كِتابٌ |
| （The）pen | الْقَلَمُمُ | （a）Pen | قَلِّمٌ |
| （The）revelation | ألْوَحْيُ | （a）Revelation | وَحْيٌ |
| （The）Messenger | آلرُسُوْلُ | （a）Messenger | رَسُوْلِّ |
| （The）angel | الْمْكَكُ | （an）Angel | مُلكُ |
| （The）Haram （refers to holy site at Makkah） | الْحَرَمُ | （a）Haram（refers to holy site at Makkah） | حرٌمٌ |
| （The）Prophet | الْنّبِّيُ | （a）Prophet | نَبِيّ |
| （The）mankind， （The）man | الْلْشَرُ | （a）Mankind， man | بشَرِّ |
| （The）faith | ＇الإيمْانُ | Faith | إِمْانٌ |
| （The）nation | الأُ⿳㇒⿻⿱一⿱日一丨一力 | （a）Nation | أُمَّ |
| （The）Lord | آلرُبٌ | （a）Lord， sustainer | رَبٌ |
| （The）earth | ＇الأَرْض＇ | （an）earth，land | أَرْض |
| （The）Garden， Paradise | الْجَنَّةُ | （a）Garden， Paradise | جرَّة＂ |
| （The）disbelief | الْكْفُرْ | （a）Disbelief | كُفْرٌ |
| （The）fire | اَلكّارُ | （a）fire | نارٌ |



An example differentiating the two: Nakira and Ma'rifa

An easy religion
The easy religion
The religion (of Islam) is easy.


الْلِين يُمر

Now, there are some letters (or alphabets) of the Arabic language to which when $J$ is added, then, the $ل$ is ignored during pronunciation. You pronounce the word as if it does not exist. For example 'الـَّْْنُ . It is not pronounced as "alshams" (even if written like that) but pronounced "as-shams".
All such letters that do not allow for the pronunciation of $ل$ are called the "Sun-letters." The rest are "Moon-letters." In 'الْقَترَ the $ل$ is pronounced. You say, "Al-gamar" and not "Aq-gamar." Here is a list of "Sun-letters," the rest are "Moon-letters."

| س | j | , | j | 2 | ث | ت | الحُروفُ الشَّمسِّة |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ن | 」 | ظ | b | ض | $ص$ | ش |  |

Al-Asmaa Ghayr al-Munsarifah are those nouns which never carry a "kasrah." They will always have a "fat-ha" no matter what the agent before them. Also, they do not come with aliflaam of ma'rifah.
(7-النَّكِرَةُ والْمَعْرِفَة)

| جهنم | مصر | لندن | الأَسْماءُ غَرُ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Hell | Egypt | London |  |

## A few simple sentences

The Quran is a revelation.

(1-النَّكِرَةُ والْمَعْرِفَة)

Yes, the Hereafter is true, and the reward is also true.

Little effort
And the clear light

Man is a rational (being).
And test (is) necessary
Death is near
And the Day of resurrection is going to happen.
And the reckoning is (going to be) hard

Then, (either) Paradise or the Fire





## EXERCISES

I．You are required to do the following：Mark an＂N＂（for nakira）or＂M＂ （for ma＇rifa）against each word，and then convert nakira to ma＇rifa and ma＇rifa to nakira．Look into the dictionary supplied for meanings of the words．

| A book |  | كابٌ | м | آككبا |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| \％ | ¢ | ＊ | \％ | ¢ |
|  | IT | 隹 | \％ | آيرّ20 |
| 新等 |  |  | \％ | \％ |
| \％ | 㵄 |  | \％ | $\cdots$ |
| － | أ |  | \％ | \％ |
| \％ |  | － | ¢ | \％ |

(૫-الئكَكِةُة والْمُعْرِنَ)
II. Translate the following using the glossary.

|  | ا . اكرَّرّوْلِ الْأَمِّنُ |
| :---: | :---: |
| 9. نَعَمْ، وَالْحَحْ حِّقِّ. |  |
|  | r r. |
|  | ع. |
|  | ه. هِلِ الإِمْمانُ قَّهْ |
|  | 7 |
| ع ا. نَارٌّ مُؤْهِدَهِّ | V |

## III. Translate the following:

(The) man
(A) hell
(An) ignorance
(The) great negligence
(The) hereafter
(A) true believer
(The) belief
(A) great negligence
(A) Muslim
(The) good deeds
(The) true knowledge
(A) trial
(A) corrupt practice
(A) great reward
(7-النَّكِرَةُ والْمَعْرِةَ)
IV. Write the meaning of the following:

V. Translate the following:
أَالْإِسْلامُ دِيْنُ
(الُُضافُ والمُضافُ إليهي)
v درس

## الْمُضَافُ وَالْمُضَافُ إلَيْهِ

(Construct/Genitive)

## Clues:

In English you say, "Name of the book." In Arabic also you express in the same way, except that a few grammatical rules are involved. So that you write: إسْ il الْكِتاب meaning: "Name of the book." The Arabic construction is called as "mudaaf-mudaaf ilayhi" in which the first noun is called "mudaaf" (Construct) while the second, "mudaaf ilayhi" (Genitive). The following may be noted:

1. When a noun occurs as a "mudaaf", it will never be "ma'rifah", ie., it will never have "alif loam" of "ma'rifah" at the beginning. It will always be in "nakirah" form.
2. It can have any "harakah" (dammah, fat-haa, kassa), depending on what precedes it.
3. "mudaaf ilayh" can be in "ma'rifa" form or "nakirah." Both are allowed depending on what precedes.
4. The second noun ie., "mudaaf ilayhi" will always have a "kassa," (or two "kasraas") but no other "harakah" no matter what precedes it.
Vocabulary: (But) وَلْكِنَا وَكَكِنْ

الأَمْثِلَةُ:



| The man's faith <br> The man's faith is strong. | إِمْمَانُ الرَّجُلِ إِيْمَانُ الرُّجُلِ قَوِيٌ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { رَجُل" } \\ & \text { Man } \end{aligned}$ | إْمْانٌ <br> Faith |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Man's intellect <br> Man's intellect is weak | عَقْلُ الإنْسَانِ عَقْلُ الإنْسَانِ ضَعِيفٌ | إْنْسَانٌ <br> Man | عَقْلٌ <br> Intellect |
| The day of Judgment | يَوْمُ الْقِيَامَةِ | قِكَامَةٌ <br> Day of Judgment | $\begin{aligned} & \text { يَوْ } 10 y \\ & \text { Do } \end{aligned}$ |
| Allah's blessing | فَضْلُ الهُ | الشَّ <br> Allah | فَضْلْ <br> Blessing |
| The season of Hajj <br> The Hajj season is near. | مَوْوْسِمُ الَالْحَجْ | $\begin{gathered} \text { آلَحَجُ } \\ \text { Hajj } \end{gathered}$ | مَوْسِمٌ <br> Season |
| Allah's beloved | حَبـــْبْ الدِ | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { Alú } \\ \text { Allah } \end{gathered}$ |  |
| Orchard of Paradise | رَوْضَهُ الْجَــنَّةِ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { الْحَـَنَّ } \\ & \text { Garden } \end{aligned}$ | رَوْضَةٌ <br> Orchard |
| The Hell's hole | حُفْرَهُ جَهِّنَّمَ | Hell | حُفرَةٌ |
| The land of the Qur'an <br> The land of the Qur'an is blessed. | أَرْرْضُ أْرُقُرْآَنِ | قُرْآنْ <br> Qur'an | أرْضُ <br> Land |
| Allah's worship <br> Allah's worship is a natural thing. | عِبَادَة الله عِبَادَة اللهُ فِطْرِيةٌ | الشّ <br> Allah | عِبَادةٌ <br> Worship |
| The unbelief of the unbeliever | كُفْرُ الكَافِــِـرِ | كافِرْ <br> Unbeliever |  |



## EXERCISES

I. You are required to do the following: a) Add harakaat to each word. b) Write the full meaning.

II. Choose words from each of the two tables A \& B, join them as Mudaf Mudaf ilayhi, give harakaat and the meaning.

A

| باب | بني | وزن | خلافة | قول |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ابن | ذكر | حسن | ترك | نور |

B

| الله | رحمة | الأخلاق | هداية | الحمار |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ' | حق | أرض | الحرمات | الجلنة |

III. Translate the following \& give all the harakaat.

| The door of the <br> house | Name of the <br> book | The house of <br> God (Allah) | Muhammad's <br> nation |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| The light of <br> faith | The land of the <br> Qur'an | Allah's <br> commandments | Allah's <br> revelation |
| Allah's earth | Allah's fire | The man's pen | The weight of <br> knowledge |
| Allah's name | The Prophet of <br> character |  |  |

## IV. Translate the following:

| قَلَمُ الْحِبْ | فَضلُ اللّهِ | فَصْلُ التينِ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| قَلَمُ الرَّصاصِ | يُومُ العيْدِ | يومْ الجُمُعْهِ |




(Plural)

## Clues:

In most cases, making a plural in Arabic is quite simple. You simply add a $g$ "(waaw)" and a ن "(noon)" to get a plural from a noun in the singular. For
 round $\dot{0}$, then, to make its plural, you remove the $\dot{0}$ and add an 1 and a . غُرُفْةٌ غُرُفاتٌ becomes. Also note that the second consonant of the feminine noun may change its "harakah" depending on the kind of noun. You will easily know what "harakah" to affix, as you learn more of the language.
However, all is not that simple. For many other words, set patterns are to be followed. Such patterns can only be learnt by hearing, or from dictionaries. The tables that follow (3-12) explain the various possible patterns. Keep looking at the tables once in a while to get familiarized with the patterns.
A single noun, you may note, can appear in several plural forms. For example, كافِرونَ، كُفُرْر ، كَفْرَة" you can make plurals such as كافِر
With reference to those plurals that are made on the patterns as in tables 6,8 and 10 , it may be noted that they always end with a single "dammah." (We can say that the rule applies to all plurals that appear acquiring the following forms: and فَفْعِلاءُ ، مَفاعِلُ ، فُعَارُ
For example, in table no. 6, from شُهِيدٌ you make the plural شُهَكَاءُ in which the last consonant never carries a "tanween." All plurals taking this form will always have one "dammah" on the last consonant. When you add an ال , (alif \& laam of "ma'rifah") it still has a single "dammah". This "dammah" can of course change to "kasrah" or "fat-haa" if the need be.

## 

## الأمثلة:

The unbroken plural masculine 1- جَمْعُ المُذَكْرِ السَّالِمِ

| $\begin{aligned} & \text { الجَمَعْع } \\ & \text { Plural } \end{aligned}$ |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| مُحْرِمُونَ | مُجْرِمَانِ | Criminal | مُجرْمٌ |
| آمِنُونِ | آمِنَانِ | One in peace | آمِنّ |
| بَرِيئونِ |  | (Free of charge or responsibility) | بَرِيء* |
| ظَإِلْونِنِ |  | Oppressor | ظَاكِلْمِ |
| مُمْلِمُون |  | One submitted | مُسْلِمٌ |
| صادقون |  | Truthful | صَادِقٌ |
| كاذبون |  | Liar | كَاذِبٌ |

The unbroken plural feminine
Y- الجَمْعُ المُوَنُتُ السَّالِمُ

| صَالِحَاتٌ | صَالِحَّانِ | The righteous (female), right, useful, proper | صَالِحَّة |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| غُرُفَاتٌ | غُرْفَتَانِ | Room | غُرْفَّة" |
| بِينّاتِّاتِ |  | Clear sign | بِيِّنِّ |
| شُهَوْاتٌ |  | Carnal appetite | شَهْهْةٌ |

(

The Broken Plural
r- جَمْعُ الُْكسَرِّ

| الجَمْعُ |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| أبواًبٌ | بَابَاِنِ | Door | بَابٌ |
| أعداءٌ | عَدُوَانِ | Enemy | عَكُوٌ |
| أهْوَاءٌ |  | Carnal desire |  |
| أسْبابُبٌ |  | Reason | كبّب\% |
| أفَارْ/أنْهُرٌ |  | River, Spring, Canal | نَهْرْ |
| أشياءٌ |  | Thing | شَيْ، |
| أمثال/أمْْفِّة" |  | Example | كَثُل* |

- $\varepsilon$

| جُنودٌ |  | Army | جُنْدٌ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| رؤُوس" |  | Head | رَأس" |
| عُهود |  | Promise | عَهٌْ |
| نُجوم |  | Star | نَحْمٌ |
| وُجُوهٌ | وَجْهانِ | Face | وَجهٌ |

- 0

| فُجارٌ | فأحرانِ | An evil man | فَاجِّ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| فُسًاقٌ |  | Comupt | فَاسِقِّ |
| كُفْرٌ |  | Concealer | كَافِر*** |


| شُهُهَاء | شَههدانِ | Martyr | شُهِهِ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| عُلَاءَاءُ/عَالِمُونَ |  | Scholar | عَالِمٌ |
| شعراءُ / شاعرونَ |  | Poet | شَاعِرِ |
| عقلاء / عاقلون |  | Intelligent | عَاقِلٌ |
| فُقراءً |  | Poor | فَقِيرٌ |
| شفعاء |  | Intercessor | شَفِيعٌ |


| صبٌل*** | سِبِّلانِ | Path | سبِّيل* |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| سُعرٌ |  | Hell - fire | سَعرِيرّ |
| كُتُّ |  | Book | كِتَابٌ |


| مُسَاجِدُ | مَسْجِدانِ | Mosque | مُسْجِدٌ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | - 9 |
| جبَالٌ | جبّلانِ | Mountain | حبّلّ |
| كِالبٌ |  | Dog | كَلْبٌ |
| بِلإِّ |  | Town / country | بَلِّد |

$-1$.

| أْنبِّاءك | نَبِانِ | Prophet | نَبِيٌ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| أَقْوِيْاءِ |  | Strong | قِوِيّ |


| 'أولياء | Friend | وركِيٌ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| أشقياء | Wretched | شَقِيٌ |
| أغنياءُ | Rich | غِنيّ |

$-11$

| عَقَائِلُ | عقيدتان | Creed | عَقِيدَهُّ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| رَذائِلُ |  | Lowness, baseness | رَذِيلَّ |
| فضائل |  | Superiority, virtue | فَضِيلة |

Irregular- 1 Y

| Plural | اليُّثْنَيُةُ <br> Dual | الُمْفَرَدُ <br> Singular |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| أَخَوَاتٌ | 'أخْتانِ | Sister | أُخْ |
| إِخْوانٌ / إِخْوٌ | أَأخوانِ | Brother | ${ }^{\text {Ci }}$ |
| أُنَّا |  | Human being | إنْسَانٌ |
| نسكاء / / نسوّةٌ | إمْرَأَتانِ | Woman |  |
| أَفْفْدِّةِ |  | Heart | فؤُّادٌ |
| أَوْدِيَيْ |  | Valley | 915 |
| لَيالِ / كَبالِيٌ |  | Night | لَّلِّ |
| أَيْتَامٌ |  | Orphan | يَتِمّ |

## （

## EXERCISES

I．Make the plural of the following．Follow the form indicated by the number given in brackets，and give the meaning by looking up into the dictionary provided．

| （ 1 ）${ }^{\text {（ }}$ | كافِّر＂ | （r）نص⿱艹乂冖＂ | （\％） | رَسُولّ（v） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| دَرّْه＂（ ） |  | （r） | （9）（9） | （r） |
| مُنَّافِّ（1） | فَاسِقٌ（1） | （r） | （r） | （r） |
|  | غَنِّ | （1） | （\％） | （r） |
| نَ | نفَقِيرٌ（1） | （r） | كافِفرٌ（1） | （r）زَوْجٌ |
| （r） | （\％） | （ （） | （1）أَكَّلٌ | （）（1） |

II．Translate into Arabic．Give all the harakaat．We have given the number of the form the plural will follow．

| Sayings（ ${ }^{(1)}$ | Grapes（ ${ }^{( }$） | Hypocrites（ 1 ） | Sins（ $\chi_{\text {）}}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Men（9） | Big ones（7） | Doors（ ${ }^{(1)}$ | Lords（ ${ }^{(1)}$ |
| Deeds（ $\uparrow$ ） | The poor（7） | Houses（ ） | Pens（ ${ }^{( }$） |
| The corrupt（0） | Covenants（ $\varepsilon$ ） | The intelligent（7） | Words（Y） |
| Mountains（9） | Transgressors（1） | Gardens（ $Y$ ） | Weights（ ${ }^{(1)}$ |
| Prophets（ 1 •） | Rivers（ ${ }^{(r)}$ | Markets（ ${ }^{(1)}$ | Hearts（ $\varepsilon$ ） |
| Good deeds（ $Y$ ） | Spouses（ ${ }^{(1)}$ | Souls（ ${ }^{(1)}$ | Lessons（ ¢） |
| Believers（ 1 ） | Rewards（4） | Unbelievers（ 1 ） | Trees（3） |
| Lights（ ${ }^{( }$） | Rooms（Y） | Chairs（ $\mathrm{\wedge}$ ） | Days（ ${ }^{(r)}$ |

## 

(Masculine \& Feminine)

## Clues:

1. In most cases, a feminine noun is made from masculine. But in others, feminine nouns occur by their own right. To convert a masculine to feminine (where allowed), you just add a o . E.g., مؤمِنْ (a male believer) to مؤِنَّة (a female believer).
2. In several cases, you learn how to make a feminine noun, or recognize one, through hearing or with the help of dictionaries.
3. All those nouns that end with الألنُ القصورة are feminine. See examples below.
4. So also all those nouns that end with ألألف المدلمودة are feminine as in examples below.
5. Except for a few, all organs of a living body that come in pairs are feminine. E.g., يَّ (hand) is masculine, but its plural is feminine, because hand comes in pair. See table no. 5 below.
6. Plurals of all beings that are not endowed with the power of intellect, are feminine, such as birds, stones, etc., even if their singular is masculine. E.g., طَيرّ (singular) is masculine, but طُيرر (plural) is feminine. See table no. 6 below.
7. Names of all females, are treated feminine, even if they do not end with : or $\because$ -
8. Conversely, all such nouns that are used for males, are masculine, even if they end with a o , e.g., خَليفة

الأَمْثِلةُ:

| Politics | سِبِاسَة" | Beginning | بِدَآيّهِّ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Young girl | جَارِيَّ | Knot | الْعْ |



| Feminine الْمُوَنَّثُ |  | Masculine 'الْمُذَكْ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Daughter | إْنَهِّ | Son | إْبٌ |
|  | سَارِقَّ | Thief | سَارقِ |
|  | مُؤْمِنَّ | Believer | مُؤْمْنِ |
|  | جَمِّلَهِّ | Beautiful | جَمِلِّ |
| Queen | مَلِكَّ | King | مَلِكٌ |
|  | صَدِيقِّةٌ | Friend | صكَِّيقٌ |

Note that the following are masculine names despite the presence of ta'al-marbuta.

| Scholar | علامَّةٌ | Vicegerent, deputy | حَلِيفَة" |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Kinanah | كِنانَّ | A name | طلَحْهَ |

Y- المؤ نث السَّمَاعِي
The nouns that you hear pronounced feminine

| Fire | نَارٌ | Egypt | مصرٌ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Soul | نَفْ | Syria | شَامٌ |


| Market | سُوقٌ | Land | أَرْضٌ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Vegetation | زَرْغٌ | Sun | شَمْهُ |


६- الأَلِلُ الْمَمْدُوْدْةُ
أَبْــــضُ (white) - بَيْضَاءُ


Organs of the body that come in pairs are feminine

| Eye | عَيْنٌ | Foot | رِجْلٌ | Hand | يَدٌ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Ear | أُذْنِ | Heel | عَعْبٌ | Cheek | خَدِّ |
| Calf | سَّ | Palm | كَفِّ | Shoulder | كَبِّ |
|  |  | Foot | قَدْمٌ | Thigh | فَخْنٌ |

廿- جَمْعُ غَمِ ذَوِي العُقُولِ هي مُؤَثْثَةٌ

Plural of anything not endowed with reason:

| Feminine |  | Masculine | Feminine |  | Masculine |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| طُيور" | Bird | طَا بُرْ | كَرَابيِّ | Chair | كُرْبِيٌ |
| شُهُورٌ | Month | شُهرْ | أحْحَارٌ | Stone | حَحَرِّ |


| صبٌّ | Path | سِّبِّ | كُتُبٌ | Book | كِتابٌ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| صِيَّامٌ | (a) Fast | صوّمٌ | كُؤوس" | Cup | كَأّْ |

## Names used for females



الأمثلة:

| This lesson is about masculine and feminine. |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| And it is one of the useful lessons. | وَهُوْ مِن الدُرُّسِ المُفِيْدَهِ |
| In the Arabic language, every noun is either masculine or feminine. | كُرُ إِسْم فِي اللُغَهِ الْعْبِيَةِ هُوْ إمَّا مُذَكْرٌ وَإمَّا مُؤنَّثِ |
| And for every noun, there is a fixed rule. |  |
| E.g., round "taa" is a sign of feminity. |  |
| However, men's names are not feminine. |  |
| E.g. Talha. It is a name reserved for men. Therefore it is masculine. |  |
| So also, women's names are all feminine. |  |
| Again, plural of animal names are all feminine. | وَأَيْضًا جَمْعُ أَسْمَاءِ الحَيْوانَاتِ كُلُهِا مُؤَنَّنَّ |
| And, organs of the body (that come in) pairs are all feminine, except for some. |  <br> بإسْتِنْنَاء بَعْض منها. |
| For your information (O girl), the word "feminine" itself is masculine. | وَكِعِلْمِكِ أَنْ لْفْظِ "الْمُوُنَّتِ" هُوَ مُذَكَرْ" |

(

| That is because, primarily, everything is masculine until there be a sign of feminineness. | لأَنْ الأَصْلَ في الأَشْيْاء التَّذْكِيرُ حَتِّى <br> تَكُوْنَ هُنَاكَ عَلامَةُ التَأَنْيْثِ |
| :---: | :---: |

Some sample sentences:




EXERCISES
I. Give the feminine form of each of the following nouns. Also give the meaning.

| مُفِيدّ | سَفِير* | طِفْ | جكِيلٌ | قَلِيمٌ* | زوْجٌ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| مُسْلِمٌ | نُورٌ | طَاهِرٌ | طيّب" | كبيرّ | عَالِمٌ |

II. Translate the following, and mark the feminine word with an "F".

| , V |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |
| 9. | r. هَلِّ الشَّمْ |


| - | ع. لاَ، نارُ جَهُّنَّ نارُ اللهِ. |
| :---: | :---: |
| \ ا. الدُّنيا فانِيَّة أَمْ لأ | ه. السًّارِقَة صَدِيقَّ الَلِكَةِ. |
|  |  |

## III. Translate the following, giving all the harakaat and marking the feminine word with an "F".

1. Is life a dream?
2. Is the sun near or far?
3. Beginning of the world
4. The knot of life
5. And sustenance is ample.
6. The man's feet are big.
7. The chairs are beautiful.
8. The ears are a part of the body.
9. The Qur'an is the revelation of Allah.10. The "round taa" is the sign of a feminine.
10. Are the deeds of the believer good? 12. Abandoning unbelief is necessary.
11. The woman's daughter is truthful.
12. The orchards of Paradise are large.
13. The names of the females are feminine. 16. Is the man trustworthy?
14. The new exercises are useful. 18. Salma is a believer.
15. Allah's earth is vast.
16. This world is the Paradise of the unbeliever and a prison for the believer. The next world is a Paradise for the believer and a prison for the unbeliever.

## IV. Follow the example and translate the rest:

Note: When مُضاف is feminine مُضافُ إلَيه is not necessarily feminine

Summer vacation is long
Winter vacation is short
The student's reading is good

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { تُزْمَةُ الصَّبَاحِ مُفِيْدَةُة. } \\
& \text { مَكِينَةُ لْنْدَنَ كَبِرَةِ. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أَزْمَارُ المَدِيِقَةِ قَلِلَةُة. } \\
& \text { نَعَمْ: الدُرُورُ ُمُفِيْدَةُ } \\
& \text { لا: بل سَهْلَة" }
\end{aligned}
$$

عُطلَةُ الصِّيفِ طَوِيْة.
عُطلْلُة الشِّتَاء قَصْيْرِة.
عِرَاءَة التِّلمِيذِ جِيِّدَةُ كِتابَةُ التُلِمِيذِ رَدِيئةٌ
دُرُوسُ الكِكَاب مُفِيْدَةُة.
رُسُوُُ الكِتَاب جَمِيلَةٌ
أَمْارُ المَكِيقِةِ كَثيرَةُة.
هل الدُّروُسُ مُفيدَّهُج
هل الدُّرُوسُ صْعْبَّبٌ

## V. Answer in Arabic:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { هل مدينة حيدراباد كبيره؟ } \\
& \text { هل ملدينة لندن صغيرة؟ } \\
& \text { أعطلة الشتاء طويلة؟ } \\
& \text { هل الدروس صـعْبَّبٌ } \\
& \text { هل مكة قريية؟ } \\
& \text { أَنزهة الصباح مفيدة؟ } \\
& \text { كيف رسوم الكتاب؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

الضَّمَائِرُ

## (Personal Pronouns)

Note: There are two types of personal pronouns in Arabic, the attached and the detached. Then of course - apart from the first, second and third person - there are those for masculine and those for feminine. We have given several tables with entries for singular, dual and plural. They should make things clear.

## Vocabulary:





الأمثلة:
I am a Muslim and my religion is Islam


And we are Muslims and our religion is Islam.


But, quite unfortunately, our activities are against the teachings of the Qur'an. So are we Muslims?



| الُـــــنــفـفِلَلةُ |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| (Plural) الجمع |  | التنثية |  | (Singular) المفرد |  |
| You (all) | أَنْتُمْ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { You } \\ & \text { (two) } \end{aligned}$ | أَنْتُمُا | You | أَنْتِ |

$-r / r$

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| الجمع (Plural) |  | (Dual) التبية |  | المفرد (Singular) |  |
| Your <br> (all) | كُمْ | Your (two) | كُمَا | Your | 3 |
| The religion of you all | دِيْنُكُمْ | The religion of you two | دِيْنكُما | Your religion | دِينُكْ |

Who are you O man?
مَنْ أَنْتَ يا رَجُجُّهُ
Allah willing, a righteous
man.
Your behavior is good.

> الأمثلة:

Are you from Delhi? How are you all?

(• • ا-الضَّمَائرِّر)


$-F / F$


الأمثلة:

Peace be upon you (O Fatima), are you a student?

国

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أَيْنَ مَدْرَسُكُنَّ يَا بَناتُبْ هَلْ هِيَ قَرِيبَةٌ } \\
& \text { أَمْ بْعِدَّةٌ }
\end{aligned}
$$

(.1-ا-الضَّمَائِرُ)


$-Y / \varepsilon$


الأمثلة:
He is a strange man, his desire is his deity, so are you his intercessor?
And they are a poor people, they have a great right on us.
وَهُمْ رِجَالٌ فُقَراء، حَقُعُمْ عَلَينْا كَبِيرٌ.

0 / ا ا الْمُؤَنَّثُ الغَائِبُ: (3rd Person: Female)

$-Y / O$


الأمثلة العامَّةُ (Examples common to all)

How are you O my friends? Is your examination near?


O people! Your God is one, He is Forgiving, Kind, and He is hard in punishment. He decides all affairs, so, will you submit to Him?
 الُّرحِيمُ، وَهُوْ شَدِيدُ الحِقَابِ. لَهُ الْحُكْمُ فِي الأمرِ كُلُهِ، فَهَلْ أَنْتُمْ لَهُ ُُـُلِمُونُ
(• ا -الضًّمَابْرُر)

## حِكَايَةٌ صَغِيْرَةٌ: A Short Story

## India:

India is a good country - its weather is clear, its land is good, its mountains are high, its forests are thick, its animals are wonderful, its birds are strange, its gardens are beautiful, its flowers are rare, its fruits are famous, its rivers are many and lengthy, its poor are reconciled with their fate and their poor condition.


Table of Personal Pronouns (Detached \& Attached)

| الجمع | التثنيه | المفرد | (Detached) <br> كُْفْحِحِلُ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | نَحْنُ <br> We two | أنا <br> I | $1^{\text {st }}$ Person Male \& Female |
|  | أنتُما <br> You two | $\begin{aligned} & \text { أنْتَ } \\ & \text { You } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} 2^{\text {nd }} \text { Person } \\ \text { (Male) } \end{gathered}$ |
| أنّْنّ | أنتّما | أنْتِ | $2^{\text {nd }}$ Person <br> (Female) |
| $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text {-8 } \\ & \text { They } \end{aligned}$ | هُمَا <br> The two | $\begin{aligned} & \text { هُو } \\ & \text { He } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} 3^{\text {rd }} \text { Person } \\ \text { (Male) } \end{gathered}$ |
| هُنّ | هُمَا | $\begin{aligned} & \text { هي } \\ & \text { She } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 3^{\text {rd }} \text { Person } \\ & \text { (Female) } \end{aligned}$ |

(1-الضَّمَائرْم)


EXERCISES
I. Join up, give the harakaat and give the meaning of the words, the first one has been done as an example.

(年) (1.)

II. Give harakaat to the following and translate:


## III．Translate the following：

| His book | O，our Lord | My pen | Those（women＇s） <br> religion |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Their people | My mother is <br> tall． | Who are you？ | What is her name？ |
| The fruit is tasty | His name is <br> Taha | Your messenger | Those（men＇s） <br> school |
| Your belief | Khalil is his <br> friend． | Their reward is <br> great | The Qur＇an is a <br> revelation of God． |
| Our nation | Their father is a <br> good man． | Your face | This is my eye |
| My reason | Those are men | He is one God． | We are their <br> enemies |
| His character is <br> good． | We are Indians | My house | Those（women＇s） <br> hair is long． |
| Who are they？ | Is faith（by） <br> words？ | I am he | Their sons are big． |
| They are Arabs | These are <br> women | Our nation is <br> one nation． | Shaytan is your <br> open enemy． |

## VI．Translate the following：

| ربُبُه | رَبُك＇ | ربِيِ | عَبْدُه | عَبْدُكَ | عبدي |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| إِمْمُ | إِ⿴⿱冂一⿱一一⿱宀八犬 | اسمي | جملك | فرسه | كلبك |
| ببغائي | حديقتك | فاكهي | وردك | أصيصي | رسوله |
| بيتي | غرسه | اسمك | إماني | صديقه | عبده |
|  | مَا اسْمُكِّ |  | حَالِي | كَّفْ حَاكُكْهِ |  |
|  | رَبِّيَ اللّ |  | كَنْ ربّ |  | إلميك |
| ورّسُوْكُ | نَعَمْ：هُوعَبْلُ | رسُوْلُّه | هل مُحـِ |  | الإِسْامُ |

(1-الضَّمَاتِرُ)
VII. Translate the following in Arabic:

| ذَلِكَ قِرْد | مَا ذَلِكْ؟ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| هذا ولّ | תن هذا؟ |  |
|  |  | السكّلامُ عَلْكِكَ يَا مَجْيْدُ |
|  | أنا مِنَ الْمَدرَّة. | مِنْ أينْ أنت؟ |
|  | إلى الْبِّتِّ | إلى أينّ؟ |
|  | عِنْدِي كِتابِّ. | مَا عِنْدَكْ |
|  | نَعَمْ ذلكِّ الْكِّابِ كِ | أَ ذَكِكَ الْكِتَابُّ كَكِّ |
| شُغُلْ. | لا هُوْ في كمبائي وَهُناكَ لهُ | هل والدك ههُنا (ين البلد) |

VIII. Answer the following in English:

هل هي مسلمة؟ أهي ذاهبة (going) إلى المدرس؟ أهي ذاهبة بغير عَرَبة (أحدّ؟ من محمد؟ ما دينك؟ كيف حالك؟ هل أنت غنيٌ (rich)؟ كيف نُزهة الصباح (morning stroll) ؟ أين أصدقاؤ كم (friends) ؟ هل رسولكم عمّد؟ هل دينكم حقّ؟ هل أنتُم صِغارٌ (little) ؟ كيف والدكم؟ أين بيتكم؟ هل أنت جِيِّدٌ (good) في اللعب؟ هل أنت مسلم؟ هل أنت هزيل" (thin) ؟ كيف أنت؟ هل لله حمد؟ أين الاستاذ؟ هل القرآن بالعربية؟ هل أنت سمين (fat) ؟ كيف هو؟ أ عندكم عربة؟ أ في حيبكم (pocket) فاكهة (fruit) ؟ أ في بيتك حديقة؟ هل عندك كلب؟ هل فِي الله شكّ (doubt)؟ هل العربية لازمة للمسلم؟ أين مكّه؟ كيف القِطُّ هل هذا الدرس صعب (difficult)؟ أين الطائر؟ هل أنت ابيض؟
VIII. Translate the rest of the following:



## (Demonstrative Nouns)

Note: Asmaa' al-Isharah are nothing but nouns we use to point out to something such as, "this, that" etc. As in other languages they are different for what is near and for what is at a distance. But you have another division in Arabic: that of masculine and feminine. In all two tables should be enough to cover all, with each table having three types: singular, dual and plural. The rest should be simple.

لِلْقَرِيب: (Near)

| الجمع (Plural) |  | التنية (Dual) |  | المفرد |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| These | هَؤلاْكِ | These | هذانِ | This | هذا | المُذَكُرْ |
| These | هَؤلاءِ هو | These | هاتانِ | This | هذِهِ | المُؤَّثّ |
| These boys | الَأَوْلاءُلُاءُ | These two boys | هَذَانِ الْوَلَدَانِ | This boy | هذا الوَكُ |  |
| These women | هَوَوُلاءُ | These two women | هَاتَانِ الْمَرْأَتانِ | This woman | هَكْهِ الْمَرْأَةُ |  |

## (

لِلْبُعِبِ: (Away/at a distance)

| الجمع (Plural) |  | التثنية (Dual) |  | المفرد (Singular) |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Those | 'أولِّك' | Those two | ذَانك' | That | ذَلِكِ | المُلْكُوْ |
| Those | 'ولِّك' | Those | تَانك | That | تِلْكَ | المُؤَّنّ |
| Those compani ons | أولِيكَ <br> الأَصْحَابُ | ```Those two compani ons``` | ذَانكَ الصًّاحِبانِ | That compani on | الصَّاحِبُ | الأمثلة |
| Those girls | أولِكُ <br> اَلْبْنَاتُ | Those two girls | تَانكَ الْبْتَانِ | That girl | تِلْكَ البْنُتُ |  |

Demonstrative Nouns in a Table

| الجمع | التثنية | المفرد |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| هؤلاء | هذان | هذا | Male | للقريب <br> Near |
| هؤلاء | هاتان | هذه | Female |  |
| أولك | ذانك | ذلك | Male | للبعيد |
| أولك | تانك | تلك | Female | Away |

## (1)

## الأمثلة:

Those are Allah's bounds.

Those days


Who is your Messenger? Our Messenger is that famous man, the noble Prophet, Mohammad. Allah's peace \& blessing be on


In the room there are two women and two girls.

These pens are for those girls.
Those men are believers.

في الغُرْفَةِ امْرْأَتانِ وَبِنْتانِ
هَذْهِ الأقْلامُ لِتِلْكَ البَّناتِ
أُولِئكَ الرِّجَالُ مُؤْمْنُونَ
(11-أسماءُ الإشارةٍ)

## EXERCISES

## I. Translate and give harakaat to the following:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ذلك رجل مسلم } \\
& \text { وتلك امر أة مسلمة } \\
& \text { يا رجال ويا نساء، هل هؤلاء أولاد كم؟ } \\
& \text { هل هذا قول الحق؟ } \\
& \text { هذا صاحب البيت؟ } \\
& \text { تانك امر أتان عاقلتان } \\
& \text { هذا رجل وذلك قرد } \\
& \text { كلمة حق هي كشجرة طيبة } \\
& \text { هذا بيتهم وهذه غرفــــهـه } \\
& \text { هؤلاء الأربعة صالـون } \\
& \text { تلك المرأة هي بنت زوجي } \\
& \text { من هم؟ أوليك ضيوفنا } \\
& \text { هل هن خالاتكن؟ نعم أوليك خالاتنا } \\
& \text { هذان الرجالن عالمان }
\end{aligned}
$$

## II. Translate the following:

These books are new
Whose trees are those?
How is your father? Is this his Garden?

How is Farid?
Is he in London?
My home is clean.
This Arabic, oof, oof!!

And how are those boys!
They are girls, not boys!
Those men, their house is small.

## III. Translate the following:




## 4. Study the samples done and translate the rest:

| This is good in reading |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| That is good in play. |  |
| هذا الفأرُ صغير" | هذا فَارّ |
| ذلكَ القِطُّ كبيرٌ وَهُوُ أبَيْضُ | ذلكَ قِطْ |
| That is a bird | ذلكَ طَا |
| That bird is a crow and it is black |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
| Is that bird a parrot? Yes. That bird is a parrot. How is that bird? It is beautiful |  يَّغاءُ. كَيْفَ ذِلكَ الطُائرِ هُ هُو جَمِيْلِ |
|  |  |
| He is a student. He is Muslim. His name is Hameed. |  |

(11-أسماءُ الإِشارةٍ)

| His character is good. In his hand is bag for books. In it are his books | خُقُقُقُ طيِبْ. فِي يَدِهِ مِحْفَظُهُ الْكُتُب، |
| :---: | :---: |
|  <br> . |  فِيها كُكُهُها وكُرُاساتُها وأقلامها ومِبر |

## V. Translate the sentences given in column 3:

| (هذِه) الأزْهْهُرُ جَمْمِلةٌ | The flower is beautiful | اكزّهرُ جَمْمِل" |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | The grape is sweet | الْعِنَبُ حُلّْهُ |
| (هذِه) الأَنْمارُ طِيّةِّ | The fruit is good | أكثهّهُ طِّبِّ |
|  | Game is useful | اكلّْلِّبُ مُفِّنِّ |
| (تِلْكَكَ) الأَشْيْاءُ جَدِيدَةٌ | This thing is new |  |
| (هؤلاء) الأَوْلادُ صِغارٌ | The boy is small | الْوَلَّ صِغِّ |
| (أولِئكَ) الرِّجَالُ كِبَارٌ | The man is big | الكَّجُلُ كِيرّ |
|  | The house is beautiful | الْبِيْتُ جَمِيلِ |
|  | The book is new | الَكِكتابٌ جَدِّنْ |
| (هذِه) الدُرُّه مُفِّدهِّ | The lesson is useful | الكدَّرْ ' مُفِّهُ |
| (تِلْكَ) الَمَدِيْقَةُ كبيرةُ | The gardens are big | الْحَدَائقُ كِبرّهِّ |
| (هؤلاءِ) الأَصْدِقاءُ صِغرٌ | The friend is small | الصَّلْيِقُ صَغِير |

الكَلِمَاتُ مَنْ، مَا، وغَيُهُمُما
Note: This lesson does not use any rule that you have not learnt earlier.


Who is this?

This is an atheist.

What is this?
This is an animal.
Who is there?

There is a man, not an animal my brother.

What is this?
This is the religion of Islam.
مَنْ هَذَاْ؟ هَنَا رَجْلُ دَهْرِيٌ مَا هَذَاْهُ هذا حَيْوانٌ. مَنْ هُنَاكَبْ
 مَا هَذَاْ مَذْا دِيْنُ الإِسْالِمِ

$$
\text { ( } \text { ا -الكلمات من، ما وغيرما) }
$$

[^0]Where are our companions?
They are sitting here.
What is the language of the Qur'an?


هَهُنا قَاعِدُوْنْ

The language of the Qur'an is Arabic.
Do they have the language of the Qur'an?

No. They do not have the language of the Qur'an.
Are these the ones who are the vicegerents of the earth? And Muhammad is not, but a Messenger.

When will be Allah's help?
Allah's help is near.
What is your name?


مَا اسْمُكُ؟ْ
My name is Adman.


Where is the one whose hair is long?
And those (women) whose hair is short?


He is Allah, there is no god except He. Knower of the

هُوَ اللُّ الّْذِي لاَ إِلَهَ إِلاْ هُو عَالِمُ
(
unseen and the seen. He is the most Beneficent and Merciful.


(الآية)
There are four men there, they are my friends.

That boy and that girl, the two are small children.

From where is this man? He is strange.
There is the man who is a member of the house.

She is one of those with whom is the language of the Qur'an.
الأَوْلادِ الصِّغارِ
 الرَّجُلُ الْذِي هُناكَ هُوَ مِنْ أَهْلِ البَيْتِ هي مِنَ اللأَتي عِنْدَهُنَّ لُغَةُ القُرْآنِ

## EXERCISES

## I. Translate the following:

Is there a truth save Islam?
Who is this man?
What is his country (of origin)?
Where are the people of the book?
The man is here.
Where are the trustworthy people?
Is this the truth?

He is the king of slaves.
Where is your house?
How is he?
The book is there.
They are the people of the graves.
Yes, my brother is away.
Where is she?
II. Give harakaat to the text and translate:

> ما هذا إلاّ قولُ البَشَرِ
(r|-الكلمات من، ما وغيرما)
ذلك رَجْعٌ (return) بعيد (far) - (القر آن)
هل أنتم خالقون (creators) هذه الدنيا؟
هل هناك حقَّ سِوُى الإسلامِ ؟

هل هذا حق ؟ إي (Oh, yes) وربي (By my Lord) الأمَل (hope) طويل واللُّذُاتُ (pleasures) كثيرة ولكِنَّ الموتَ قريب إنه رَجُل كبير ولكنَّهُ بَخيل (miser). فَقْميُهُ (shirt) طويل ولكنْ جَيْبٌه (pocket) قصير (small) فهل أنت له صَدِيقُ؟

## I. Translate the following:

 عَربِي. وَفي ذلكَ الكتَابِ مِنْهَاجٌ جَدِيدُ. ذلكَ الرَّجُلُ مَشْغُولٌ بالْقِرَاءةِ. هذا لِسَانٌ



This is a man. He is a Muslim person. He has a character. He has a character that is good. In his hand is a book. In his hand is an Arabic book (complete the rest).

## الوَلدُ الْمُجتْتَهُدُ والولد الكَسلانُ

 الوقتُ عِنْدَه شَيءُ ثَمِيْنٌ.


( Y ا-الكلمات من، ما وغيرهما)

## The hardworking boy, and the lazy boy

This is a hardworking boy. A hardworking boy is liked. He has great success. So he his happy all the time. Time with him is a precious thing (complete the rest)





This is a fruit-sellers' shop. In it all kinds of fruits are available. In it are pomegranates, grapes, apple, banana, fig and oranges. (Complete the rest)





Good manners is a great thing. This boy is well-behaved. His character is good. He is first in saying Salam to every elder. To him the teacher is like father (complete the rest).

أنا عَبْدُكَ، وَأنت ربِّي، أنت خحالِقِي وَخالِقُ كُلِ شَيء. أَنا عَبْدٌ صَغِير، وَأنت رَبٌ




```
(r ( \-ا\كلمات من، ما وغيرم)
```

I am your slave. And you are my Lord and Lord of everything. You are my creator and creator of everything. I am a little slave and You are a Great Lord (complete the rest)




All praise for Allah. To Allah belong the east and the west, and He has power over everything. And He is the All-forgiving, the All-merciful, and He is the All-hearing, the All-knowing (complete the rest).

## II. Answer in Arabic:


(


أسئلة:
 كيف الأستاذ؟ من حمد؟ هل عحم رسول؟ أذلك الرسم جميل؟ كيف الورد؟

## حُرُوْفُ الْجَرِ"

Note: Every language has articles. So has Arabic. But as against the articles of other languages, Arabic language articles not only affect the meaning but also effect changes in harakaat. For example, there are some articles (in fact, in all seventeen) which, if they appear before a noun, give it (one or two) kasra, or jarr. Hence these articles are called as Huruf al-Jarr. Here are some of the articles and some examples. It is pretty simple.

| With | ب | In | فِي\% |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| From | رِنْ | For | J |
| On/upon | على | To | ! |
| About | عَنْ | At | حتّ, |

## الكلمات الجلديدة:

| Spouses | أزْوْجٌ | Trees | أشْجارٌ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Mouths | أفواهٌ | Hereafter | الآخرِّة |
| Near | دانية | Respect / honor | الأدبُ |
| Silk | سُندُّ | Repentance | التوب |
| Capable | قدير | Men of understanding | أولي الألباب |
| Village | قرِّيّة | Table | الطاوِلَّ |
| Sad | مَحْزونٌ | Velvet | إسْتّبرْقٌ |

Muslims
Queen
Stretched

Ant


Flowers
Fruits

القَّ

أزمار


Where is Makkah?
Makkah is in the Arabian peninsula.
Praise be to Allah and thank you my friend,

Where are you going?

(r r -حُرُونُ الْجرُر)

Is there a deity along with Allah?

Piety is (in) avoiding the disallowed and carrying out the obligations.

Who is in that house?
Is there a (remarkable) oath in that for a man of knowledge?
Allah's is the sovereignty (kingdom) of the Heaven and Earth.
ءَ إِلٌّ مَعَ اللهِ؟

 هَلْ في ذِلكَك قَسَمٌ لِنِي حِجْرٍ (الآية) للّه مُلْكُ السَّمواتِ والأَرضِ (الآية)

ألأمثلة: (Y)


فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ
In the school



Upon the camel


Towards the mosque
الْوالِدُ
كِلْوَالْدِ (لَ اَلْوَالِدِ)
For the father



In the house



Upon the horse


إلى الْمَمْدَانِ
Towards the ground الَوْلَدُ لِلْوَكَبِ (لِ الْوَكَبِ)
For the son

20


From the school



Cc


بلِوَاكِلِد


From the house
فِي الْقر انِ

لِلِّهِ

الأمثلة (ب):
The book is on the chair الكتابُ على الْاكُرْسي
Where is the chair? اَيْنَ الْكُر سي؟
. The chair is on the floor آْكرسي على الأرْن Where is the pen? The pen is in the pocket.
أَيْنَ القلمُّهُ القلم في البَيْبِ

How is the boy? The boy is good.
كَْفْ الولد؟ الولد طَيبٌ Where is the fish? The fish is in water. أَيْنَ السَّمَكُ؟ السَّمَكُ فِي المَاءِ
الزَّهْرُ على الشنَّجرِ

The flower is on the tree.
Praise is established for Allah

أَيْن الزَّهُرْبُ
W here is the flower?


Deeds are necessary for the scholar العَمَلُ ضُرُوري لِلْعالِم

The teacher is sitting in the chair.

الَولَدُ وَاقف" على الأرضِ The boy is standing on the floor

The pen is necessary for writing القلم لازمُ لِلْكتابَة وَاْلْكتاب لازمُّ لِلْقِراءَةٍ And the book is necessary for reading Knowledge is a blessing for man

The lesson is easy for the boy

In this picture is flower-vase, and in that flower vase is a plant. On that plant are leaves and flowers. The leaves are green while the flowers are pink.

لِمَنْ ذلكَ الأصِيْصُ؟ ? Whose flowerpot is that ذلك الأصِيْصُ لِذلك الرُّجُلِ. That flower-pot is for that man Is that plant from the garden?


Yes, that plant is from the garden


Whose garden is it?

The garden is for that man and he is sitting on the chair. In the garden are flowers and fruits also.
(r آحْرُوْفُ الْحَرِّ)

## EXERCISES

## I. Give harakaat to the text and translate. See dictionary for difficult words:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { إنا الأعمال بالنيات - من أين أنت يا أخي؟ - من قرية صغيرة بلد كبير - قوله } \\
& \text { الحق وله الملك - ذلك قوطم بأفواههم. ما الإسلام؟ - فما شـــــأفم في الآخـــرة؟ } \\
& \text { الإسلام دين النصيحة (sincerity/admonition) - هذا هو الحق عند أولي الألباب - إن } \\
& \text { الله على كل شيء قدير (able)- هل فيكم رجل رشيد؟ (gentleman) النصيحة لم؟ (اله }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (اليوم؟ - عند بــيتي حديقـــة فيهــا (sovereignty) يوم القيامة: لمن الملك (will say) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { في الغرفات (chambers) آمنون (peace) - هل الإسادم هو الدين الصحيح عند مسلم } \\
& \text { اليوم؟ - بالقول نعم ولكن بالعمل لا - يـ القصر (palace) طاولة (table) والطاولـــة } \\
& \text { مع الكرسي و على الكرسي غلة (ant)- في يدها قطعة (piece) من الحبز - فالأدب } \\
& \text { (decorum, good manners)، والأدب يا أيها الناس فهي ملكة النمل. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## II. Translate the following:

The key is in his pocket. Paradise has seven doors.
Is there a thief in this house?
The Quran is in Arabic.
The cat is on the table.
The reward is for the righteous.
Striving with a little.
The soul is from the heavens.
On the poor man is a rich cloth.
Unto Allah, Unto Allah, O people.
Allah's curse is on the transgressor.

III. Translate the following:





 للمُمِلمِ عِزَّةٌ وَللكَافَرِ ذِلُةٌ في الآخرة


 (exercise) مُمْيدٌ (beneficial) ، وَهَذا التَّرِينُ سَهْل" جِدَاً مِنَ الاوَّلِ إلى الآخرِرِ

The Qur'an is a blessed Book and it is Allah's speech, there is no doubt in it. However, the hypocrite has doubts and his recompense is Jahannum. It is in clear Arabic language. And, obtaining Arabic (language) is easy, not difficult. But rather, its method of teaching is difficult. And a Muslim's neglect of it is a big mistake and a great wrong. (Complete the rest)
(rir)

## IV. Add harakaat

| اسلام | للعلم | الدرس | على الله | في القرآن |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| الشجر | من الزّهر | للرسول | الدّين | من السحد |
| حمار | للفرس | على الجمل | في المنة | إلى البيت |
| كلب | على الرجل | للصغير | من الكبير | للعب |

## V. Add harakaat and tr. following the sample done:

من أنت؟ أنا مسلم. هل أنت طيب؟ نعم، أنا طيب. عندي ذكر الله خير. بعده القراءة والكتابة خحير
Who are you? I am a Muslim. Are you alright? Yes, I am alright. To me, Allah's remembrance is the best; and after it, reading and writing is good. (Complete the rest)
قَلُمُ الرصًّاصِ (pencil) ضروريٌ للكتابةِ وقَلَمُ المِبِ (pen) أيضا. ألك حديقة؟ نعمَ،



 عظيم".

## نَوْاصِبُ الإِسْم

Note: Just as those articles that give a kassa to the noun that follows, there are such articles that give a fat-ha (or nasab) to the noun that follows. It is quite simple.



Allah is Forgiving, Merciful.
Certainly Allah is Forgiving, Merciful.


Muhammad is His (Allah's)
slave and His Messenger.

( £ ا -نَوَامِبُ الإِنْمِ)

Indeed the journey is long and the provision is low but Allah's help is near.

Indeed this is certainly a strange thing.
Certainly, this woman is a scholar
Certainly, this is an admonition




إِنْ هنهِ الَّرَأَّةَ كَالِمَّةٍ

The Hereafter is true (to happen) but the people are in الآنخرةٌ حقّ وَلكِنَّ النَّاسَ هُمْ ين غَفْلَةٍ heedlessness

## EXERCISES

## I. Translate giving all the harakaat:

إن ربك سريعُ الحساب - في الحديث إن النظافة من الإيمان - إن بُطهُ (seizing)
ربِّك لَشديد (الآية) - إن الدين عند الله الإسلام (الآية) - إن الجَمَل صبور very)

إن المنافق (level) (hypocrite) في الدَّركَكِ (bottom-most) من النار - أيهـــا
الناس هل عندكم علمّ عن حقيقة (truth) الحقائق؟ - ألا وهي إن رزقنا ورزقكم على الله ربنا ورب الناس جميعا، ولكن أكثر الناس كافرون بنعمة الله - إن الله رحيم بالناس ولكن الناسَ عن آياته غافلون.

## II. Translate the following:

Surely the lion is courageous.
Verily the reward is certain.
Is it true that the Muslim nations are in sleep?
Indeed wealth is plenty, but peace is little.
Do you have the knowledge that our Lord is one God?
Surely, the boy is intelligent but the girl is good.
Death is near but the man is unmindful.
Surely the book is the teacher.
Arabic is good but the question is how is the teacher?

（Adjectives）

## Clues：

In Western languages there are no rules pertaining to adjectives and the nouns they qualify．But in Arabic both the qualified and the qualifier follow certain rules．This helps in differentiating between plain nouns and adjectives．
The qualifier（or adjective）is called＂na＇$t$＂（or＂sifa＂）and the＂qualified＂is called＂man＇oort＂（or＂mawsoof＂）．It must be remembered as a rule of grammar that the＂na＇t＂and＂man｀oot＂must agree in four things for them to be so declared；ie．，one to be declared＂na＇t＂and the other＂man＇oort＂：

1．Both should be either＂nakira＂or＂ma＇rifa＂．I．e．，one cannot be in the ＂nakira＂form while the other in＂ma＇rifa＂form．
2．Both should have the same＂harakaat＂，i．e．，if one is＂marfu＂，the other should also be be＂marfu＂．E．g．one has＂nasab＂but the other＂dammah＂， then they are not in＂sifa＂and＂mawsoof＂combination．
3．Both should match in gender．If one is feminine，the other should also be feminine，of if one is masculine，the other should also be so．
4．If one is singular，the other should also be singular，if one dual，the other also dual ．．．
If two nouns placed together，do not meet with the above four conditions，the combination is not that of＂na＇t＂and＂man｀oot．＂
In the following table，considering first three examples，the combinations in the first column（from right：remember，you are studying Arabic），is not a＂sifa＂and ＂mawsoof＂combination；the second column combinations are，as also are the combinations present in sentences 4 onwards．It should not be difficult to recognize the＂$n a$＇$t$＂and＂man＇oot＂combinations in example four and below．

الأَمْ⿰亻⿱丶⿻工二⿹\zh4口一


| A good girl | The girl is good |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| The command is for Allah the |  |  |
| Exalted, the Wise |  |  |

The following four are all "na' $t$ " and "man'oot" combinations:


## (10 - النَّعْتُ وَلْمْنُوُتُ')

الكلمات الجلديدة:

| Small | صَغِيرَّهِ <br> (بمع: صغيرات) | Companions | أَصْحَابٌ <br> (م: صَحاليٌ) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Meal | طَعَمٌ | Works | أَعْمالٌ (م: عَمَّ) |
| Room |  | Wealth | أَمْوال* (م: مال) |
| Temptation, trial | فِفْنَةٌ | Children | أُولادٌ (م: ولد) |
| Strong | قِيِّ | Days | آيّامٌ (مفرد :يوم) |
| Noble | كرِّرِّ | Fixed | ثُابتٌ |
| City | مكِِّينة | Peace | سَاكُمٌ |
| Prophet | نَبِيّ (النبيّ) | Good | صَالِحَّحٌ |

## EXERCISES

I. Translate the following giving all the harakaat, and point out the " $N a$ ' $t$ " and Man'oot" and "Mudaaf and Mudaaf-ilayhi", and state your reasons.

المرأة مسلمة - كلمة طيبة - اللدين الكنيف (pure) - امرأة مسلمة - طعام لذيذ الكتاب المبارك - إمان قوي - أيام مبار كة - قرآن كريم - سلامٌ قولٌ من رب رحيم - دين كامل (complete) - الأجر ثابت (confirmed) على الأعمال الــصالحة ماء مسكوب (poured) لأصحاب المنة - المدينة المنورة هي ملدينة (city) البي - إما أموالكم (wealth) وأولادكم فتنة [means of trial] (الآية) - خَلْقُ الناس من نفس

واحدة - غرفات صغيرات في البيت الكــبير - إن الـــشيطان للإنــسان عـــــو (strong) موي (flear) مذا الرجل عمله قليل ولكن إعانه (enemy) - وما من دابة (animal) صغيرة ولا كبيرة في الأرض أو في الــــــاء إلا (except) على الله رزقها (provision).

## II. Translate the following into Arabic giving all harakaat.

Allah is Knowledgeable, Wise.
The oppressive world
The cat is on a black table.
The white man's nose is big.
The black table is in a dark room.
The Black stone is in Ka'ba's wall.
The dark room is under the ground.
Beautiful birds are rare (نادر).
Where are the big boy and the little girl?
In the garden in front of my house there are tall trees.
Good (men) are for good (women) and bad (men) are for bad (women).
That man has no character: He is good and bad. He is good with good (men) and bad with bad (men).
Allah, there is no God except him, the Lord of the great 'Arsh (عرش).

## III. Translate the following:






(10 -النَّعْتُ وَالْنْعُعُتُ')



## IV. Add an adjective:


V. Follow the translation done and do the rest:






This is the school's ground. There are children therein, and with them is the Physical Instructor. And there is a European person there. He is standing. With him is a European woman. In her hand is a beautiful flower. She is his wife; and with her is her dog. These are little boys (complete the rest, and answer the following).

## (10)

## VI. Answer the following:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { الأولاد؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

ليس

## Clues:

This lesson attempts to teach the usage of three words: كَسن ، أيلُ ، كُ
Although لَهْسَ (which serves both as an article, as well as verb and which carries a negative meaning when it appears as an article) can be used in a variety of ways, but when it is used with a $ب$ following it, then it becomes a specific grammatical construction. In such a situation, the noun that follows it will necessarily have two "kasras", as you notice in the fourth example below.
In one sense the two other nouns كُ كَّ and are similar to لَيَّ except that they do not need a to follow them. They work without ب ب But the effect is
 nouns two "kasras". See example 10 below which mentions كُل إنسابٍ. It might also be kept in mind that since 'كَليُ and are nouns, they can then themselves be affected by what precedes them. For example, if كُ كُ is preceded by say كُر" will acquire one or two "kasras" (whether one or two will depend upon other factors). And the whole will become لِكُل. Therefore, كُ لُ "رُ (every man) becomes لِكُل" إنسانٍ (for every man) - when $ل$ is added to كُ
It might also be kept in mind - at all times - that all changes in "harakaat" or "construction" are followed by an "agent" ( عامِل ) preceding a noun or verb. Therefore, if you find any change in "harakaat" - remember that the original "haraka" of every noun is two "dammas" - then, for the reasons of change, you must look behind and not in what follows in a sentence. For example in إنسانٍ the change from two "dammas" to two "kasras" in what originally was إنسان" is to be looked backward and not forward. In this case the change is because of كُرُ R only affect what follows. Such as كُلُ إنسانٍ .
(17-ليس/ بـ - أي/ كل)

Every/ all Which


Negative


The unbelievers will not have except the Fire, in the Hereafter.


Said (the Messenger), "O my people! There is no foolishness in me; but I am a messenger from the Lord of the worlds.
قال (الر سول) يا قومٍ لِس
بي سَفَاهُةٌ ولكتّي رسُولُ مِن
الرَّبًٍ العالينَ (الآية)

Allah is Just.
اللُعُعِلِ "

Certainly Allah is not a transgressor.


Allah is sufficient for His slaves.
اللٌّ كافٌٌ لِعبادِدِ

Is Allah not sufficient for his slave?

The morning is near.


Is the morning not near?

Which man is a stranger?


Every man who does not have a friend is a stranger.


And which man is intelligent?
وأَي إنسانٍ عاقِلٌ؟
(7 ا-لِسى/ بـ - أي/ كل)

Every man who has intellect is intelligent.
Are you not strange O my brother?
Allah is Creator of all things.
Which place are you from, O my brothers?
From the Syrian lands.

Which of you is the leader over you?

Every one of us is a leader over himself, and over one who is weak.

Is not among you a rightly guided man?

Certainly there are signs in that, for everyone
(who is) very patient and very thankful (to Allah).

Which village is this?

كُلُ مَنْ عِنَدَهُ عَقَلٌ فهو عاقِلٍ يا أَنخيْ أَليس أَنْتَ بِغَيْب؟؟ اللهُ خَالُقق كُلِ شَيء (الآية)

 (الآية)

 أَبَّة

## EXERCISES

## I. Translate the following giving all the harakaat.

إنما أنت منذر (warner) ولكل قوم هاد (guide) - (الآية)

الله خحالق كل شيء وهو الواحد (only one) القهار (The Subduer) - (الآية)
(דا ا-ليس/ بـ - أي/ كل)

هو الأول والآخر والظاهر (apparent) والباطن (hidden) وهو بكل شيء عليم (الآية) يوم القيامة ليس للإنسان من دون الله من ولي (friend) ولا شفيع (intercessor) ولا ولا قول الملائكة يوم القيامة للكفار: أليس هذا بالحق؟ أليس الله بأحكم (the best) الحاكمين (judges) - (الآية)
إن في البنهة للمؤمنين من كل الثمرات

كل نفس ذائقة (going to taste) الموت - (الآية)
زكريا وييى وعيمى وإلياس كل من الصالمين (الآية)
ولكل أمة أجل (death / term) (الآية)

## II. Translate into Arabic using كل and , giving all harakaat.

Today every man is a scholar.
Is every man happy?
No. Everyman is not happy.

Man is not a monkey.
Allah is not unaware.
What bird is on the tree?

Which of your things are cheap (رَخِيص) O trader (تاجر) ?
Everything with me is cheap except the good things.
Everything in today's dinner (الكَشَأَاء) is cold except water.
Every religion is not true. Islam is not false.
Every donkey is a fool. Every foolish man is not a donkey.
All Arabic lessons are difficult.
This is a new lesson. And this lesson is not easy.
My friend. All good things are not easy.
(7 ا-ليس/ بـ - أي/ كل)

## III. Study the examples and translate the rest:

اللُهُ لَيْسَ بِغَائب!. Allah is not absent
اللُّهُ مَوْجُوٌْ Allah is present اللُّ لَيْسَ بِظَا لِمِ. اللَّهُ رَحِيْمٌ الإِسْام لَيْسَ بِبَاطِلٍ.
الآِسْامُ حَقَّ

The monkey is an animal الْقِرْدُ حيَوانٌ الاقِردُ لَيْسَ بِانْسانٍ. The monkey is not a human


أي فَصْل؟ ? Which season/class أي مِنْهَاجْ؟ كُلُ بَلَدٍ. Every country/town كُلُّ مِنهَاْبُ اَلْغُرَابُ أَسْوْدُ بَلْدِي طيِّبٌ. هَذَا مِنْهَاجٌ جَدِيْدٌ لاَ، كُلُ شَيء لَيْسَ بِرَخِيْص.
لا، كُلُ فَصْلِ لَيْسَ بِطْيِبٌ
لا، كُلُ رَجُلٍ لَيْسَ بِمسرْوُرْ


Which bird? آيٌ طائر؟
كُلُ فُصْلٍ. Every season/class
أَي بَلَدٍ طِيبٌ؟
أَي مِنْهَاجِ جَدِيْدٌٌ
أَ كُلُ شَيءُ رَخِيْصِّ؟
أَ كُلُ فَصْلِ طِيبُ؟
اَ كُلُ رَجُلٍ مُسرْورْوْبٌ
(17-ليس/ بـ - أي/ كل)

## IV. Answer in Arabic:



## ظرفُ المكانِ

## Explanation:

(i). "Zarf Makaan" are those words that indicate the place in which an action
 tells us the place in which the act of "sitting" occurred, in this case it is 'الجدار . However, it is not necessary that these should appear in only such sentences as speak of an act. They can appear in other forms also, e.g., العرشُ فوقَ العالم .
They can be called adverbs, but essentially, they are nouns, and so, they can be affected by an agent; i.e., they can undergo changes in "harakaat."
Further, they are always used as "Mudaaf" with another noun as "Mudaff Ilayhi" with the same grammatical demands and conditions. (You might re-look into Lesson 7 at this point).
However, these "adverbs" always end with a "fat-haa" and rarely carry two "fat-haas." They never carry a "dammah" but can carry a "kasra"; for example:

## من فوتِهِمْ

(ii). The new words that are introduced in this lesson (table 2 ) are also used as "Mudaaf."
Examples below are self-explanatory.

| Under | تَحْتَ | Above, on | فوْقَ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Between, among | بَيْنَ | Front | أَمَامَ |
|  |  | Behind, Back | خَلْفْ / ورَّاءَ |

الكلمات الجلديلة:

| Possessor of (feminine, singular) | ذاتُ | Possessor of (masculine, singular) | ذُو |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Possessors of (feminine, plural) | ذُوَاتُ | Of/with/ possessor (Masculine, plural) | أُولُو/ذَور |

```
(lv)
```

Where is the pen? The pen is on the book.

And He is the irresistible over His slaves, and He is the Wise and Knowledgeable.

And where is the book? There is no doubt about it, that the book is under the pen.

Peace be on you. Where are you my friend?

I am in front of you.
In front of my house is a garden, and behind the garden is my school, and my heart is between the school and the garden.

Between me and you, the truth is with him in this matter.
He is the Allah possessor of strong power.
We are a people of strength and a people of great fighting capability.
He possesses a big mouth (talks loud) and she possesses a long tongue (a chatter box).

And above every possessor of knowledge, there is one, more knowing.
This is the truth among the people of understanding.
أَيْنَ القَلَمُّه القَلَمُ فَوْقَ الكِتَابِ
 الْخَبِيرُ (الآية)
وأين الكتابُجْ مِمَّا لا شَكَّ فيه أَنْ
الكتابَ تَحْتَ الْقَلِمِ
اللًَّالُمُ عَلْيكَ، أينَ أنتْ يا صديقي؟
أَمَامَ بَيْتي حدِيْقَةٌ وَوَرَاءَ الْحديْقِةِ
مَدْرَسِتيْ وَقَلْبِيْ بَيْنَ المَدْرَسَةِ
والْحَدِيْقَةِ.
بَيْنِي وَبَيْنَكَ، الَحْقَّ مَعَهُ فِيْ هذَا الأَمْرِ هو اللهُ ذُوْ القُوَّ المَتِيْنِ
نحن أُوْلُوْ قُوَةٍ وَأَوْوُوْ بَأْسٍ شَدِيدٍ (الآية) هو ذُوْ فَمْ كَبْرٍ، وهِيَ ذاتُ لِسانٍ طَوِيٍْ
وفَوْقَ كُلِ ذِيْ عِلمٍ عَليمٌ (الآية) هذا هو الحقُّ عِنْدَ أَوْلِّي الأَلْبَابِ

```
( ا \ v)
```

Those women are possessors of beauty.
Pious men and pious women, they are the intelligent people with your Lord, and they are the people who are of great luck.

He is Allah, besides whom there is no God, knower of the unseen and the seen. He is the Compassionate the Merciful.
Allah is a witness between the prophet and his people.

Alla's hand is over their hands.

كَبِي (luck)
هُوَ الله الذِيِي لا إِلَةَ إِلاْ هُوَ عَالِمُ الَغْبْبِ
والثَّهَادَةِ هُوَ الرَّحْمَنُ الرَّكِيم (الآية)

يَدُ اللهُ فَوْقَ أَيْدِيْهِمْ (الآية)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { الصَّالِحُونَ وَالصَّالِحَاتِ هُمْ عِنْدَ رَبِّكَ } \\
& \text { أُولُو الألْبَبِ وَأْوَكِكَ هُمْ ذَوُو حَظِّ }
\end{aligned}
$$

## EXERCISES

## I. Translate giving all harakaat.

هو رجل ذو مال كثير، والعجيب (strange) أنه ذو عقل قليل

ليس الأمر بعجيب (strange) لأن هناك كثير من الناس عندهم مال وليس هم بذوي العقول، وبالعكس (as against that) هناك أولو العقل ولكن ليس عندهم مال. إن لِجســك (body) عليك حق، ولأهلك (family) عليك حـــق، ولــــنـي قرابتـــك عليك حق (الـديث) (relations)
النبيون والصديقون والشهداء (martyrs) والصالـون هـم على صراط (path) مـــستقيم
(v آ-ظرفُ المكانِ)


 أنا تحت أمرك (your order) يا سيدي (master) فحكـك (command) على رأســــي (head)


## II. Translate giving all harakaat:

Your lord is the possessor of mercy.
He is a man of good character.
Between us and our Lord is a compact.
He has bread on his head.
The Yemenis are a people of great patience.
Is there behind every great man a woman or a man?
There are two ants. The second is behind the first. And the first is in front of the second. Where are they?
Yes, there are many of them. There is his mother, and wife, and daughters, and sisters, all, one behind the other.
You have before you O Muslims: either (إِّا) jihad or death and destruction at the hands of your enemies.

Clues:
'الفِعْلُ = the verb
= Literally, the past. Or simply, verb in the past tense.
With this lesson we enter into a new phase of learning. We begin to deal with verbs.

1. The first point that must be noted is that a verb in the past tense can be considered as the root. Since, you begin with it, and modify it in a variety of ways to derive several other forms with variegated meanings.
Almost $99 \%$ of the verbs in the past tense are triliteral. That is, they are made up of three letters or consonants. See examples in the second line above.
2. Sometimes the three letters are not visible. For example, فَر" (he fled) seems to have only two letters. But that is not correct. The "shaddah" ( ) on the last letter, indicates that the letter, is repeated, and the word was originally which has been compressed to become 'فرَ .
3. It is easy to recognize the triliteral verbs since all the verbs of this kind always have "fat-has" on the first and last consonant. E.g., in فَعَل (he did) the first letter has a "fat-haa" as also the last letter ل.
4. In contrast, the middle letter can have either "fat-haa", "kasra", or "damma."
5. Nouns do not come on the pattern of trilateral verbs.
6. We know that there are three tenses to the verbs: past tense, present tense and future tense. This lesson is about past tense. Present and future tenses are made by modifying the past tense.
7. Then, as we know, there are two additional forms to the verbs: active and passive. In this lesson we are dealing with the active ( المَرْ ) alone. The passive is made by modifying the active. This we shall deal with later. ("He beat" is active. "He was beaten" is passive).
8. Verbs also need to state two more things: the number of persons involved in an act, and their gender. In English it is complicated. You have to say, "He did
(1 ا -الْفِعْلُ الماضبيُ-1 )
it", "The two of them did it", "Those women did it", "You all did it," - and so on. In Arabic it is simplified. Words are replaced with letters, and the pattern is set. So, once you know the pattern, you know the meaning in full: "It was done. When was it done? How many persons were involved? What was their gender?", etc.
9. Look at the table below. There are 14 rows. Each row definitely answers the above questions. E.g.,
فَعَل Means, he did (of course in the past).
ل ${ }^{\text {فَ }}$ Means, two (males) did.
Means, more than two (males) did.
نَعَلَتْتْ Means, she did.
And so on, you end up with 14 cases (or forms).
10. You will also notice the effort on the part of the Arabs to shorten the table where possible. In actual there should be 15 forms (three for each: Third Person, Second Person and First Person. But the dual of the "First Person" has been removed, because of rarity of usage.
Study the table now and see how well structured it is.
And this is the structure for all verbs in the past tense.
Once you have known this table, you can make the 14 forms - once, given a new word. This is because, all verbs will acquire this pattern alone: none other.
You can replace نَعَلْ (he did) with (he wrote) and go on to make:

and so on.
(The above Arabic line should be read from right to left).
You can take any other triliteral verb, the 14 forms will remain same.
This makes Arabic language pretty easy. Now you merely need to learn verbs.
(1^ا-أْفِعْلُ الماضيُّ-1)

|  | جَدْوْلُ فعلِ الماضيّ: |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1. He did | فَكِّ | الْمُذكُرُ | $\begin{aligned} & 3^{\text {rd }} \\ & \mathbf{P} \end{aligned}$ |
| 2. Those two did | فَفَكِ' |  |  |
| 3. They (more than two) did | فَعْلُوْا |  | الْغائِبُ |
| 4. She did | فَعْتْ | الْمُوَوَتُثُ |  |
| 5. Those two (women) did | فَكِلَ |  |  |
| 6. They (women) did | فَعَلْ |  |  |
| 7. You did | فَفلْتِ | $\begin{gathered} \mathbf{M} \\ \text { المذكر } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 2^{\text {nd }} \\ & \mathbf{P} \end{aligned}$ |
| 8. You two did | فُعَلْتْهُا |  |  |
| 9. You all did | فَعَلْتُمْ |  | $\text { الْمُحْاطَبُ } \begin{gathered} \mathbf{n} \\ \text { n } \end{gathered}$ |
| 10. You (woman) did | فَعْلْتِ | $\begin{gathered} \text { F } \\ \text { المونث } \end{gathered}$ |  |
| 11. You two (women) did | فَعَلْتٌ |  |  |
| 12. You all (women) did | فَعَلْنُنَّ |  |  |
| 13. I did | فَعَلْتُ | مذكر <br> ومؤنث | $\mathbf{1}^{\text {st }}$ <br> Person الْمُعَكَمُ |
| 14. We did | فَعْنْنَا |  |  |

(1 ا -الْفِعْلُ الماضيُي-1 )

الأمثلة:

| They knew (masc.) ( $\Gamma$ ) | عَلِمُوا | He knew (1) | عَلِمْ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| They knew <br> (fem.) (7) | عَلِمْنِ | She knew ( ) | عَلِمَتْ |
| You all knew (masc.) (9) | عَلِمْــتُمْ | You knew (masc.) (V) | عَلِمْتْ |
| You all knew (fem.) ( 1 Y) | عَلِمْـــُـــنَّ | You knew (fem.) ( $1 \cdot$ ) | عَلِمْتِ |
| We knew (l६) | عَلِمْـــنـا | I knew ( 1 (Y) | عَلِمْتْ |


| They ate | أكَلُوا | He ate | أَكَلِ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| They ate (fem) | أَكَلْنَ | She ate | أَكَلَتْ |
| You all ate | أَكَلْمُمْ | You ate | أَكَلْتَ |
| You all ate (fem) | أَكَلْقُنَّ | You ate (fem.) | أَكَلْتِ |
| We ate | أَكَكْنا | I ate | أَكْلْتُ |


| They read | قَوَوْوا | He read | قَرَأً |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| They read (fem) | قَرَأَنَ | She read | قَرَأَتْ |

(1 1 ا-ألفِعْلُ الماضيُيُ-1)


الأمثلة - Y:
 physical exercise is beneficial?
نَعَمْ: عَلِمَ التّلامِيذُ أنْ الرِياضَةَ الْْلْدَنِيَّةَ مُفِيْدَةِّ.

Have you known that Allah forgives the sins?
 نَعَمْ: عَلِمْنا أنَّ اللهُ يَغْفِرُ الذُُّوبَ.

Have you worshipped Allah and have thanked هل عَبَدتَّ اللَّ وَشَخَرْتَ لهُبْ
نَعَمْ: عَبَدتُهُ وَشَكَرْتُ لَهُ.
(1 ا -أفْعِعُل الماضيُّ-1)

Yes, I have worshipped Him and have thanked Him.
 For Allah has created me and fed me of the good things and has safeguarded me from every affliction.

## الرَّجُلُ و عائِلُتُهُ

The Man and His Family

The man entered the house and the two guests also entered, and the people of the house - all of them, are happy. So the maid cooked the food, the two girls cleaned up the rooms and all of the women worked hard. The father asked his uncle: "Did you hear today's news? And you two, O boys, Did you two breakfast, and you, all, O people, all of you, Did you read the newspaper, and you dear daughter, why did you strike the boy? And you two pretty daughters, why have you put on old clothes? And you all O women, did you sit down in the Hadith


الأخْبارَ اليومُ؟ وأنتما يا وَلدانِ هل أَكَلْتُا الفُطورْ؟ وأنتم أيها الناسُ - كُلُكم - هل قَرَأتم البِريدةَ؟ وأنتِ يا أَيَّها البنتُ
 وأنتما يا أئَيُها الُِمِيلَتان، لماذا لَبَسْما الثوبَ القدبَّ؟ وأنتُنَّ

(1 1 -ألْفِعلُ الماضيُّ-1)
circle, for I read it alone myself, but if we all read together, then that is better."
حَلْقَةِ الحديث فَقَلْ قَرَثْه وحيدًا
ولكن لَوْ قَرَأناه معًا فذلك

## EXERCISES

## I. Write the meaning of the following.


II. Write the past tense of the following for third, second and first person singular, plural, male and female. Write the meaning in each case under the word as in the examples above. Give all the harakaat.

III. (Complete the tr. and answer the following questions in Arabic): سعيدة نَهَضْتْ من النوم صباحا، وعبدت الله، وذهبت إلى الطبنَ، وطبخت الطعام، وبنامَا ايضا فضن معها، وعبدن الله، وقرأن القرآن، وحفظن الدروس، ثُ عملن مع

أمهن، وبعد الإنطار لبَسن ثِيابا نظيفة لا فاخرة، وذهبن إلى المدرسة في عر بتها، ودَخلن الصف، وجلمسن فيه بأدب، وما نظرت واحدة منهن حين الدرس يمينا ولا شمالا، وععلمتهن مدحَّهن فإفن كتبن واجبات المدرسة بصحةٌ، وفرحت بعملهن، فيهن حياء (modesty, bashfulness)، والحياء من الايمان، وما سألن والدهن لباسا فاخرا، أو غذاء" (food) لذيذا (tasty)، وما لبـن قط لباسا ضِيِّقا (tight) رَقيقا (thin)، وما رغبن إلى الأفلام (films) ، وما تر كن الأدب (decorum, good manners) في (fil) (رال من الاحوال (in any situation)، فما غضبت عليهن أمهن قط (ever, never)؛ بل فرحت، وكل واحد في البيت وفي المدرسة مسرور بغُلقهن، فعلى مؤلاء البنات رحمة الله، إنه جعلهن من البنات الطيبات

Saeedah got up from sleep early morning and Prayed to Allah. She went to the kitchen and cooked the food. Her daughters also got up with her, worshipped Allah, and recited the Qur'an. They memorized the lessons then worked along with their mother. After breakfast they wore clean clothes, not expensive ones, and went to the school in its bus. They entered the classroom and sat down in a good manner. Not one of them looked right or left during the lesson. Their ladyteacher praised them for they wrote their homework correctly and so she was happy with their work. (Complete the rest)
الأسئلة:
متى فضت الأم؟ ماذا فعلت فى الطبخ؟ متى فضتِ البنات؟
هل عبدن الله؟ كيف خلقهن؟ هل فيهن حياء؟ أ غضبت عليهن الأم؟
أغضبت عليهن المعلمة؟ هل هن طيبات؟ أيفرح إخوانن بخلتهن؟
هل طبخن الطعام مع أمهن؟ أرغبن الى الأفلام؟ هل رغبن الى لباس جميل؟
أ فيهن ديانة (religiousness)؟ هل الصلاة علامة (sign) المسلم؟

## الأمثلة:

I worshipped Allah in the morning and prostrated myself unto Him when I read the Qur'an after the Prayer.
They have understood the worth of time.

The cat sat with the dog.
Did you drink tea this morning?
This is what you have stored for yourselves.

We sat in the sun while they sat in the shadow.

When you showed kindness to the people, you showed kindness to yourself since you are of them.

O boy, the girl wrote with the pen and you erased what she wrote!

He who did good deeds, entered Paradise.
But today the people have taken to disbelief.
The women entered the shop, looked at the clothes and asked the prices. Then they left as they entered.

 مَذا ما كَزْرْتم لأَنُسِكُمْ (القَرآن) الظَّرَّنِّ جَلَسْنًا في الشَّمسِ وهم قَعَوُوا في إذا رَحِمْتَ عَلَى النَّاسِ فَقَد رحِمْتَ نَفسَكَ لأنَّكَ مِنهم يا أيها الولدُ! البِنتُ كَتُبَتْ بِالقَكِم وأنتَ مَسْحْتَ ما كَتْتَا



النُّساء دَخَلْنَ الدُكُكَانَ، فَتَطْرْنَ إلى

(19-أْفْعْلُ الماضيـ-r)

فَلِمَاذا دَخَلْتُنَّ الدُّكُّانَ يا أَيُّها النِّسَاءُ "Why did you enter O dear, "مِّ" women?"


Allah has written the fasts upon us for one whole month in a year.
كَتَبَ اللهُ عَلَنْنا الصَّيَّامَ لِشَهُرٍ كَامِلٍ في

The girls heard the sound of their father and fled.
البنات سمعنَ صوتَ والدِهِن وهربن

Did you gather together wealth in free time, or did we earn some good?

Had you known the truths about this world, as I have known, you would have laughed very little.
وَلَوْ عَرَفْتْمْ حَقَائِقَ الحَيَاةِ كَمَا عَرَفْتُهَا،


## EXERCISES

## I. Write the full meaning of the following.



II. Translate the following giving all the harakaat.

The man went with those who went to Egypt. Children! Did you pray to your Lord today?
Allah is not unaware of what you did (in the past).
O Women, did you pray fajr today?
I wrote to him that I have become sick (مَرْض) and he wrote (back) that he came out of the hospital (الُستشْشْفَى) yesterday.
She read the letter and then put it under her pillow (وَسَادَّة)
I went to my friend's house. We sat together until the sun set.
Verily, those men who disbelieved, and those women who disbelieved, for them is a severe punishment in the Hereafter.
They have known, but they have not worked (عَلِّل).
Allah was angry with (on) them because they did corruptions (فَسْتَ).
Do you miss (فَقَدَ) something my friends?
Yes, we lost our friends when Allah gave (أَعْیَ) them wealth.
We left them in front of the mosque. They entered and drank some water.
Rayhana! Did you go to school today? Did all the girls wear blue (أَزْرْتُ) dresses today?

## III. Complete the translation and answer the questions that follow:



(19-أْفِعْلُ الماضبي


العّمة:- مكن أخذت بجيع المخضروات؟
ج:- أخذْتُها من خَضًّار
العّمة:- أين أخِواتِكِ
ج:- هن فى تلك الـجرة
العّمة:- أما عرفتُنَّ شيئا في التربية المرلية أَيتها البنات؟
البنات:- عرفنا ولكن ماصنعنا ذلك الإدام الى الآن
العّمة:- أفى أَعمال البيت نقيصة (blemish)؟
البنات:- لا. ليس فيها نقيصة بل فيها عِزَّة (respect) ومَدَحٌ (praise)
العّمة:- هل قَرأتُنَّ كتابا فى اللسان العربِّ؟
البنات:- نعم، قرأنا كتابا اسمه مِنهاج العربية
 (words)
(مّنْ = مِن مَن)

Jameela is a hardworking girl. At the school she learnt to make a dish from among the (various) dishes and then one day she made it at home. Her aunt asked her:
Aunt: What is it you have made O Jameela?
Jameela: I have made O my aunt, a new dish.
Aunt: From whom did you know that dish?
Jameela: I learnt it from my teacher.
Aunt: Along with whom did you make it just now?
Jameela: I made it all by myself.
Aunt: From what things did you make?
Jameela: I made it from meat, eggs, vegetables and refined butter (ghee).
Aunt: From whom did you take all the vegetables?

> (19-أفْفِلُ الماضي

Jameela: I took them from the vegetable vendor.
Aunt: Where are your sisters?
Jameela: They are in that room.
Aunt: Have you not learnt anything about housekeeping O girls? (complete the rest).
أسئلة:
ماذا فعلت جميلة فى البيت؟ من سألها عن الإدام؟
من أَي شيء صنعسِ الإدام؟ هل هي جيدة فى التربية المترلية؟ أَين أَخواهّا؟
هل عملن معها؟ أقرأن كتابا فى العربى؟ هل رغبن فى لسان القر آن؟
هل القر آن كلام الله؟ مِمن أَخذت جميلة بميع الـخضروات؟

## IV. Write the verbs:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أنا - سُمِعِ } \\
& \text { نخن - حفِظ } \\
& \text { أنتم - اخذ } \\
& \text { أَنت - أَكل } \\
& \text { أنا - فعل } \\
& \text { نین - قر } \\
& \text { أنتم - رجع } \\
& \text { أنت - خرج }
\end{aligned}
$$

> أَنت - ختم
> نحن - سأل
P • P Y
الفعل الماضي -

الأمثلة:
Allah has set a seal on the hearts of the hypocrites.


And those who disbelieved in Our signs, they are the men of Fire.

Allah has known that among you (some) are sick.





When we heard the call, we went to the mosque. We entered into it and the people also entered. They remembered Allah much. And after the Prayer all of them left.

Whoever worshipped Allah alone, entered Paradise.



When the teacher left the classroom, the children began to play.

Have you ever been to the seaside?

The cat ate the mouse.
I acted with great patience with this man. But he did not reform himself.


هَل خَرَجتْم إِلى شَاطِئُ البَحْرِ أَبَداً؟ أَكَلَتْ القِطَّةُ الفأرَ.

الشَّخْصِ كَـَثِيراً


(• • -الفعل الماضي-

The first thing that Allah created is the pen.

I heard his footsteps as he entered the house.

Is it you who did this to our idols O Ibrahim?

How long did you stay in Makkah when you went to it last year?

I have vowed a fast for Allah.
Wealth does not decrease with charity.

Allah is the Creator of all things and He has power over all things.

Peace be upon you for showing patience.
Surely, We raised a Messenger among every nation.

Allah, has struck for us many examples in the Qur'an.

.
 (الآية)



 شَيُّ قَدِيْر.


 كثيرا

$$
\text { ( } \cdot \text { - -الفعل الماضي-r) }
$$

## EXERCISES

## I. Write the past tense of the following. Give all the harakaat and state the meaning.



## II. Translate giving all harakaat.

 أخذذناهم مل قرأتم الكتاب

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ركب الشيخ حماره } \\
& \text { أرأيت (didsee or saw) الذي كفر بآياتنا } \\
& \text { ماذا فعلت إذا رأيت المنكر (evil)؟ } \\
& \text { في يده رسالة كتبها صديقه } \\
& \text { طلعت الثـمس وغاب (disappeared) القمر } \\
& \text { تر كْنا الجمهادَ ، فَتَركَنَا الله. علِمنا ولكن ما عَمِلنا، فجَهِلنا } \\
& \text { أكلنا العنب وشربنا الماء وشكرنا الله } \\
& \text { إذا جاء (came) رسول ربنا سمعنا كامهه } \\
& \text { دخلت النساء البيتَ وضربن أولادهن }
\end{aligned}
$$

(• • -الفعل الماضي -

كتب الولد رسالة طويلة إلى أخيه بقلم أخيه على جدار غرفته للا دخل الشرط (police) بيتَ الوزيرِ (minister) وجدوا فيه مالا كثيرا سرقها هو، ولكن ضربوا خحادمَه وذهبوا به.

## III. Read, translate the rest and answer the questions:

 الماء، ونظرنا إلى أزهار جميلة وفرحنا (enjoyed) هِا، فنهض (got up) أَحَدُ أصدقائِنا وذهب إلى الأشحار وقطف (picked up) منها زهرا وفاكهة (fruit)، أنا مَنَتْتُ والأصدقاء منعوه، ولكنه ما رجع (stop) عن فِعْله، فبعد قليل ظهرَ (appeared) ورهِ
 كك ؟ أنا ما أذنتُ! يا أصدقائي، أَخْذُ شئ بغير إذن عادةٌ (habit) مذمومةٌ (disapproved)

One day we went out for recreation in the morning towards the garden. We entered into it, and sat down under a tree near the water and looked at the beautiful flowers and felt happy. Then one of our friends got up, went to the trees and picked a few flowers from them, and a few fruits (too). I prevented him, as also the friends prevented him (complete the rest and answer the following)

أسئلة:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { إلى أين خرج الاولاد؟ متى خرجوا؟ أين جلسوا؟ بأي شيء فَرِحوا؟ فن قطف }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أدخلتم حديقة بغير اذنٍ؟ هل أحذتَ منها شيئ؟؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

## IV. Read and answer following questions in Arabic:

وَكَبَ. تُمَّ رَجَعَ إلى الْبَيْتِ.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أسئلة: } \\
& \text { من خرج؟ من أين خرج؟ إلى أين ذهب؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

## V. Answer the unanswered questions in Arabic:

مَاذا أَكَلْتِ
 مل فَهْنَتَ اللدَّرْنَ البَدِيدِّ



أ حلـت في العربة؟
ماذا فعلت في المدرسة؟

أَ فَرِحَ الأستاذُ بِكَّمْ نَعَمْ: فَرِحَ بِي.
مل أكت البر تقال؟ $\quad$ أ أكلت التين؟
أ فهـت الدرس؟ أ ذهبتَ إلى المديقة؟
هل حفِظتْ
ماذا قرأتْ؟

$$
\text { ( } r \text { - -الفعل الماضي }
$$

## VI. Read and answer the questions:



The teacher entered the classroom and so the students fell silent. The monitor began the lesson and the students heard him.

Then the monitor finished the lesson and the teacher asked him, "Did you understand the lesson O monitor?"
العريف: نَعَمْ: نَهِمْتُ يَاسِيِّدِي.

The monitor: Yes, I understood my master.

Then the teacher asked the students. Teacher: Did you hear the new lesson and understood it?
التَّلامْْذْ: نَعَمْ: سَمِعْنا وَفَهمنا جِيِّدًا.

The students: Yes, we heard and understood very well.

Then after some time the teacher stood up and went out of the classroom and the students went home.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { الأسئلة: }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { مل بَدأت الكتابَ العَربي؟ هَل فههتم درسَ الامسِ؟ من عريفكم وكيف هو؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { هلِ القرآن كتاب اللّ؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

(•-r-الفعل الماضي-r)

## VII. Follow the instructions below:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { البنات لَبْنْ بعد الإفطار ثيابا نظيفةً لا ضِيِّقَة" ولارقيقةُ ومشُطنَّ شَعرهن ولبسن }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { السِّجل وأمرَتْ العريفةَ بقراءةِ الدرس ففتحتِ العريفةُ الكتابَ وقرأتِ الدرسَ } \\
& \text { بِصَوتٍ جَهـرٍ وجميعَ التلميذاتُ سمعن بِعنايةٍ ومانظر ن يمينا ولا شِمالا } \\
& \text { المعلّمة (سألت بنتا صغيرة) أفهـت الدرس يا عابدةُ؟ } \\
& \text { عابدةُ: فهمتُ يا سيدتى جيدًا }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { التلميذات: نعم سمعنا وفهمنا جِيِّدا جدًا }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { الدرس الجديد جيدا. }
\end{aligned}
$$

After the breakfast the girls wore clean clothes, neither tight nor thin. They combed their hair. They wore on their shoes and went to the school in its vehicle. They sat in the classroom in a good manner and, after a while the ladyteacher entered the class room and the girls stood up for her. Then the lady teacher registered their presence in the register and asked the monitor to read out the lesson. The monitor opened the book and read out the lesson in a loud voice and all the girl-students heard her carefully looking neither right nor left. (Complete the rest and answer the following questions in Arabic):

كُ كُ كئلة:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (-r-ا-الفعل الماضي-r) } \\
& \text { هل عندكن بقرةٌ؟ هل حلبتن (milk) اللبن تارةٌ؟ هل صنعنَ الزبدة (butter) من اللبن } \\
& \text { تارة؟؟ هل الحياء خحيرُخَصلةٍ (quality) ؟ هل القرآن كتابٌ باللُغَةِ العربيةِ؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

## VIII. Read the following and answer the questions:

## لُعبَةُ الْفُميَيْةِ

فى ليلة مقمرة بعد الفراغ من الصالاة وفروض المدرسة، جمعت سكينة عِدَّةٍ من صاحباهَا فضربن قرعة بينهن وجعلن سعيدةٍ لِصَّة وعصَبْن عينَها بِنديل وتر كنها وهي وحيدة، وبُعُدْن عنها. وهن حولا فى دائرة، يضحكن وهي تذهب وراءهن بجلدٍ: تارة يكينا وتارة شمالا. وبعد قليل، بخحت سعيدة فى القبض على واحد منهن فسألتها البنات: أَتعرفين يا سعيدةُ مَن هذه؟ سعيدة عرَفْتها وذكرت السمَها أَهْا رشيدةُ فسأَلثهْن: أَلا ترفعن عنّى المنديلَ وبتعلن هذه البنتَ مقامي؟ فرفعتِ البنات عنها منديلَها، وجعلن


## Blinding the Eye Game

In a moonlit night, after the Prayers and school homework, Sakeenah got together several of her companions. They struck lots between themselves and made Sa`eedah "the victim." They bound her eyes with a handkerchief and left her alone and they moved away from her. They are around her in a circle, laughing and she goes after them with difficulty: sometimes right sometimes left. After sometime Sa`eedah succeeded in catching one of them and the girls asked her. Sa`eedah, do you know who she is? Sa`eedah knew her and mentioned her name that she is Rasheedah. She asked them, Will you not lift from me the handkerchief and place this girl in my stead? So the girls lifted from her, her handkerchief and placed Rasheedah in her place as the "victim." They sat down for a while for they were very tired. Then they took to playing anew.
(r-r-الفعل الماضي-r)

## أسئلة:

فى أي ليلة لعبت البنات؟ أى لعبة لعبن؟ ماذا فعلن أَوَّلا؟ من حعلنها لصّهُ؟ بأي شىء عصبن عينيها؟ كيف ذمبت وراء وراءنّ؟ على من قبضت؟ مل تعبت البنات؟ لماذا رفعن المنديل عن سعيده؟ لماذا حلسن قليلا؟ هل فرغن عن الصاذه؟ أتلعب جميع البنات فى الليلة المقمرة؟ (مأخوذ من كتاب منهاج العربية)

(Present \& Future Tense - Active)


## Clues:

= الْمُضارِع = present/future tense; or simply, verb in the present or future tense.
We have said earlier that the triliteral verbs in the past tense are the roots from which other forms are derived; and that they come in 14 forms.
What about the Present and Future tenses? Well, you modify the past tense to make them Present or Future tenses. To our good luck, the present and future tenses are combined in one format. We can easily determine from the context whether the word has been used in the sense of present or future tense. We do not need two tables: one for Present tense, and another for Future tense. One serves the purposes of two. E.g., from 'َكَبْتُبُ (he wrote) you make ('he writes" [present tense] or "he will write" [future tense]). But what exactly is the tense when used in a sentence? Well, the context will clarify it. E.g., in a short sentence يَكْتْبُ غَذًا (he will write tomorrow): the usage tells us that the word is in future tense (because of "tomorrow").
So, a مُضارِع i is made from ماضي . It is done by adding consonants at the beginning or at the end of the verb in the past tense.
Look at the table below. In the first row, a has been added at the beginning. In the second, $a$ has been added at the beginning and an 1 and $\dot{\sim}$ have been added at the end. In the third line a a is added at the beginning, and a and $\dot{u}$ are added at the end. And so on.

The 14 forms of the فعل المضارع appear in the same format, no matter what the verb, just as in the case of الفعل الماضي.
And the pattern of addition of letters to the basic table also remains constant, no matter what the verb.
It may also be noted that the first letter of the مضارع of the triliteral verb always carries a "fat-ha", and the middle letter (ie., the last letter of the root, ie., the ماضي format) either carries "damma", "kasra" or "fat-ha." See the

examples given directly under the heading. You will note that the middleconsonant of the ماضي as it appears in the مضارع has "fat-haa" in the first example ( يَفْعَلُ ), "dammah" in the second example ( يَكْتُبُ ) and "kasrah" in the third example ( 'يَغْسِ ).
(As to what the "harakah" the middle-letter of the ماضي will carry when it appears in the مضارع does not depend on what "harakah" it has in ماضي . It follows another set of rules. But one can learn from usage also.
These "harakaat " also remain constant, no matter what verb it is that is being converted to مضار ع form.
In contrast, the "harakaat" on the last consonants of the مضارع are constant. That is, the last consonant will always have a "dammah" when converted to عضارع . E.g, in the three examples cited just below the heading, the last letter always carries a "dammah." So that $J$ has a "dammah" in the first example, has a "dammah" in the second example, and the $ل$ of the last example also has a "dammah."
Of course, you will notice that the "harakaat" are different in different lines of the 14 lines of مضار form. But, whatever "harakah" you have in one line will be repeated in that line, no matter what the verb.

In simpler words, the "harakaat" you see given to the first letter of the مضارع and to the last letter of it, through the 14 forms, remain constant. Only the middle consonant undergoes changes.
These rules then, make things easy for us. Diacritical marks are fixed. They do not change from verb to verb. So, you can now memorize the table below. Once you have done that, you can make the different pattems from any verb of the past tense given to you.
You must have already guessed that you can work backwards also. That is, given a verb in مضارع you know what its ماضي could be. E.g., if you have
 additional consonants, and so, the ماضي has to be سُجَدَ .
A final note: As a matter of cheer, you might note that the two tables of ماضي and مضارع are basically the only ones (out of dozens) that you need
to memorize. All other tables (that will follow as we proceed) play around with these two.

| جَدْوَلُ الفعلِ المضارِع |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1. He does or will do | يَســفــــعلُ | الْمُدْكُرُ | $\begin{aligned} & 3^{\text {rd }} \\ & \text { P } \end{aligned}$ |
| 2. The two of them do or will do | يَســفــــــهِلانِ |  |  |
| 3. They all do or will do |  |  | $\begin{gathered} \mathbf{s} \\ \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{n} \\ \text { الْغائبُ } \end{gathered}$ |
| 4. She does or will do | تَــفــــعِلُ | الْمُوْنُثُ |  |
| 5. The two (women) do or will do | تَـــفــــــِلانِ |  |  |
| 6. They (women) do or will do | يَــفْعـــلْنَ |  |  |
| 7. You do or will do | تَـــفــــعَلُ | $\begin{gathered} \mathbf{M} \\ \hline \text { المذر } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \mathbf{2}^{\text {nd }} \\ \mathbf{P} \end{gathered}$ |
| 8. The two of you do or will do | تَــفْـــــِلانِ |  |  |
| 9. You all do or will do |  |  |  |
| 10. You (woman) do or will do | تَـــفـــــعِلين | $\begin{gathered} \text { F } \\ \text { المونث } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \mathbf{s} \\ \mathbf{o} \\ \mathbf{n} \\ \hline \text { الْمُخاطَبُ } \end{gathered}$ |
| 11. The two (women) do or will do | تَــفْـــــولانِ |  |  |
| 12. You all (women) do or will do | تَــفْعْــلْنَ |  |  |
| 13. I do or will do | أَفْــــعلُ | مذكر ومونث | $1^{\text {st }}$ Person الْدُتَكَلْمُ |
| 14. We do or will do | نَـــفْــعَلُ |  |  |

```
(
```

| They read or will read | يَقْرَوْوُنَ | He reads or will read | يَقْرَا |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| They (women) read or will read | يَقْرَأْنَ | She reads or will read | تَقْرَا |
| You all read or will read | تَقْرَؤوُونَ | You reads or will read | تَقْرَ |
| You all (women) read or will read | تَرْكَأْ | You (woman) read or will read | تَقْرِئِنْ |
| We read or will read | نَقْرَا | I read or will read | أَقْرَا |


| They write or will write | يـــــكُّون | He writes or will write | يَـــكْتُبُ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| They (women) write or will write | يُــــكتّبْ | She writes or will write | تَـــُتُتُ |
| You all write or will write | تَــــكُبون | You (male) write or will write | تَـــُتُبُ |
| You all (women) write or will write | تَــــكتُبْ | You (woman) write or will write | تَـــكُنْينَ |
| We write or will write | نَـــُتْ | I write or will write | أَكْتُبُ |


| They wash or will wash | يَغْسُونُ | He washes or will wash | يَغْسِلُ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| They (women) wash or will wash | يَغْسلْنَ | She washes or will wash | تَغْسلُ |
| You all wash or will wash | تَغْسُولُ نَ | You wash or will wash | تَغْسِلُ |
| You all (women) wash or will wash | تَغْسْلْنَ | You (women) wash or will wash | تَغْسِلِنَ |
| We wash or will wash | نَغْسِل | I wash or will wash | أَغْسِلُ |


| They all go or will go | يَذْهُبونَ | He goes or will go | يَذْهُبْ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| They (women) go or will go | يَذْهَبْ | She goes or will go | تَذْهَبُ |
| You all (men) go or will go | تَذْهَبُونَ | You go or will go | تَذْهَبُ |
| You all (women) go or will go | تَذْهَبْ | You (women) go or will go | تَذْهِبِنَ |
| We go or will go | نَذْهَـُ | I go or will go | أَذْهِبُ |

(المِعلُ المُضارِعُ)

| They work or will work | يَعْلُونَ | He works or will work | يعْمْلُ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| They (women's) work or will work | يَعْمَلْنِ | She works or will work | تَعْمَلُ |
| You all work or will work | تَعْمَلُون | You work or will work | تَعْمَلُ |
| You all (women's) work or will work | تَعْمَلْنِ | You (women) work or will work | تَعْمَلِنَ |
| We work or will work | نَعْمْلُ | I work or will work | أَعْمَلُ |


| They succeed or will succeed | يَْجَحُونَ | He succeeds or will succeed | يَنْجَعُ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| They (women) succeed or will succeed | يَنْجَحْنِ | She succeeds or will succeed | تَنْجَحُ |
| You all succeed or will succeed | تَنْجَحُونَ | You succeed or will succeed | تَنْجَعُ |
| You all (women) succeed or will succeed | تَنْجَحْنِ | You (women) succeed or will succeed | تَنْجَحِينَ |
| We succeed or will succeed | نَنْجَعُ | I succeed or will succeed | أَنْجَحُ |

(I-Y-الفِعلُ الُُضارٍِ)

Y-الأمثلة

Do you testify that Allah is one? أَ تَشْهَلُ انَّ اللهُ وَاحِلُّم نَعَمْ: أَشْهَلُ انَّ اللُّ وَاحِلٌ

Do you know that success is with endeavour?


Do the students know that the lazy is هلْ يعْلَمُ التّالامِيذُ أَنْ الْحَمْالانَ مَذمُومُمْ
disapproved?
نَعَمْ: التّلامِيذُ يعلمون أَنْ الْكَمْلانَ مَذمُومٌ.

Students: Teacher! Shall we write down what we hear from you?

Teacher: No. Rather I shall read and you will remember it.

A student to his companion: What does the teacher read?

The other student: Thanks to Allah. I hear nothing but the voice. Therefore, I do not understand anything.

He who works will succeed and he who is lazy will be the loser.

Allah creates things from nothing. People make from the things that Allah created, other things.

O girl! Why are you writing on the book? And O boy, why are you sitting on the note book? And you write nothing. The teacher will be angry with you. Sometimes he might beat you. Do you not dislike being beaten?

And O big girls, do you sit doing nothing? You do not clean up the


خَلِقهَا اللهُ أَشْياء أُخْرَى


وياأيتُها البنات الکَيرَاتُ هل

rooms, do not cook food, and do not wash the clothes. But all people today are working and striving. And none sits without work except the lazy.
 بِدُوْنِ العَّلِ إلا الكَـْانَنَ

Mother to son: Have you been to the
 market?

Son: I shall go after a while.
الوَلَدُ: أَذْهَبُ - بَعدَ قَلِيلٍ

Mother to the girl: Will you wash the dishes?

Girl: Allah willing, I shall wash them in the evening.

Father to mother: Did you cook the dinner?
Mother: Allah willing, I will cook it tomorrow.




الَأُمُ: أَطْبُخُ غَداً إنْ شاء اللُّ.
الأمثلة - ع:

ما ذا تَفْعَلُ ياحَمِيْدُ اكُكُ الطُّعَامَ What are you doing, Homed? I am partaking food. أَ تَأكُلُ الطُعامَ دَائماً وَآْتْتَ وَحِيْدًا؟ Do you always eat the food while you are alone? تَارَةُ آكُلُ وَأنا وَحِيدًا وَأحيانا مَعَ الأَصْدِقَاءَ Sometimes I eat while I am alone and sometimes with friends

What is it you are eating now? At the. مَاذَ تَأَكُلُ الأَنَب الأَنَ آكُرُ الْخُبْزِ moment I am eating bread
Do you eat rice at home? هَلْ تَأكُلُ الرُزَّ فِي البَيْتِ؟ نَعَمْ: آكُلُ الرُّزَّ فِي البَيْتِ فِي الغَدَاءِ وَيْ العِشاَء. Yes, I eat rice at home at lunch and dinner Don't you eat during the break, Majeed? الا تَأكُلُ فِي الفَتْرَقِ يْا مَجْيْدُ؟ I do not eat anything, Hameed لا آكُلُ شَيئاً يَا حَمِيْدُ الا
 school today, Hameed?
Hameed: Yes, today I will go to حميد: نَعَمْ: اَذْهَبُ الْوْوْمَ وَكِكْن لا اَذْهَبُ غَدًا the school but tomorrow I will not go. Majeed: Why will you not go tomorrow? بحيد: لِمَا ذا لا تَذهَبُ غَدًا؟
 بحيد: أَ حَفْظْتَ دَرْسَ الأَمس؟؟ Majeed: Have you memorized yesterday’s lesson?

Hameed: Yes, I have memorized.
 بحيد: هَلْ كَتَبْتَ واجبات الْمَدْرَسَةِ أَنْتَ وَاَصْدِقاؤُ؟؟ Have you written down the homework (school work) you and your friends?
Hameed: Yes, we wrote very well indeed. حميد: نَعَمْ: كَبَبْنا جَيّدًا جدًّا
Majeed: When will you go to the school? بحيد: مَتى تَذهَبُ إلى الْمَدْرَسَهِّرِ Hameed: 1 will go to the school after the حميد: أَذْهَبُ إلى الْمَدْرَسَةِ بَعْدُ الإفطارِ breakfast. Majeed: What is it you eat and drink in بحيد: ماذا تَأُكُلُ وَتَشْرَبُ فِي الإفطار؟ breakfast?
(

Homed: I eat bread with a side dish واَشْرَبُ الثّاي. بالإِدامٍ حمد: اكُلُ الْخُبْز and drink tea. Majeed: What do you and your بحيد: مَاذا تَفْعَلُ أَنْتَ وَاَصْدِقاؤُك بعدَ الدَّرْنِّ friends do after the lessons?
Lamed: We play football in the ground. .الْمَمْدَانِ
 Majeed: Is this what you always do? بميد: أ هكذا تفعلون دائما؟ Hameed: Yes, this is what we do. حميد: نَعَمْ: نَفْعْلُ هكذا. Majeed: Do your friends study with you?


Hameed:
 They study with me during the day and at night they study at their homes.

## EXERCISES

I. Write all the other forms of the following verbs. Give all the harakaat.

(الفِعلُ المُضارِعُ)
II. Convert the following to the present and future tense giving the meaning and the harakaat. The first one has been done as an example.

عَبَدنْا - نَعْبُدُ We worship or will worship

III. Give the meaning of the following giving all harakaat.

يقعد يغضب
يكهلن يعلمون
تقعدن تأكل
صدقن تترك


نخرج
أ كتب
يقرؤون

تشربون
أ صدق
ندخل
يكفرون

تَغْــلون
يعمل
تأخذذون
تفعلون


تصلحين
تدخلين
يخر جون

أجلس
نكره
تفسق
تكفرين
IV. Make the present and future tense of the following verbs (in past tense) and give the meaning below the word. Add all harakaat. First one is done for you.

You do or will do تَفْعَل (أنتَ)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (أنتنَ) غضب (أنا) ترك (أنتِ) ذهب (أنتم) كره (أنا) ركب } \\
& \text { (أنتِ) رحم (أنتنَّ) شرب (أنتم) عبد (أنتم) كـبـ (أنتَ) جلـ }
\end{aligned}
$$

(1-النِعلُ 'الُُصارِع')

صدق (هي) درس (أنتن) كتب (هو) جهل (نحن) أكل (أنت)
قرأ (أنت)
ركع (هي) بغل (أنت)
كره (هن)
علم (هم)

V. Answer the following in Arabic:

ماذا يأكل حميد؟ أيأكل الحبز؟ أيأكل الرزّ؟ هل يلعب الأولاد في الفترِّ (أَيأكُلُوْنَ أيَقْرُوْون؟ أَ تشرب اللبنَ؟ هل تأكل الفاكهة؟ هل تفهم (break)
 تَكتُبونْبُ نَكتُبُ الدّرْسْ. ألا تلعبون اليوم؟ لاَّ لا نَلْعبُ اليَوْمَ. هل تَخْرُجُونَ للُّنُزهِجْ نَعَمْ: نَخْرُجُ بَعْدَ العَصْرِ (afternoon Prayer) . فيَ أَي سَنَةٍ
 يَوْمٍ؟ من يَوْمِ الإِثنين (Monday). أَتفهمون الدَّرس؟ هل تقرؤون القرآن؟ أَ تفهمون القرآن؟ هل تأكلون في الفترة؟ هل تلعبون؟ هل تعبدون؟ أ تَنْهُضُ صَباحًا؟ أتلعب في الفصل؟ هل تسجدون لله؟ هل تلعب بكرة القدم؟ هل تشَكرون للهُ مَن لَعِب مُعكَ؟ مَن قَرَأ؟؟ مَن كَتَبْ؟ من يقرأُ مَعَك؟ مَن يَكتُب؟ مَن يَعبُ؟ أَ يَعبُ الاوْلاد؟ مت يلعبون؟ أَينَ يلعُبُونَ؟ هِ قَرَؤُوا الدَّرسْ التّفاح؟ أعبدتم الله؟ أتسجدون لله؟ هِل خر جتم تارةً للترهة؟ أجلستم في عَربةٍ؟ هل لَعبتَ بِكُرٍْ القَدَم؟ هل تَأكلون لـماًُ طرياً (fresh) ؟ أتشربون لبناً
(1-الفِعلُ المُضارِعُ)
خالصاً (pure) ؟ هل تقرأ دائماً (always) ؟ أَ تَلعب في الفترة؟ هل تأكلون
الرزّ دائما؟
VI. Make Maadi and Mudaare` of the following:  VII. Give harakaat and make mudaare`

هـم (سكت)، أنت (رعب)، أَنا (تعب)، نحن (جمع)، هى (غضب)، هن (رفع)، انا (لبس)، أنتن (عجن)، هى (خبز)، أنت (كنس)، هـم (ملأ)، أنتم (حذر)، أنتنّ (طبخ)، هي (حهر)، هم (جعل)، أنتنّ (خدم)
VIII. Read and answer the following questions:

أسرَ ةٌ صِمكيـةٌ
هضت الأم وبناتُها من النوم وبعد صلاة الفجر أخذن في العمل فالآن واحدةٌ منهن تكنس وأخرى تغــل الصحاف والقدور والَملاعِق والبنت الكبيرة تطبخ مع أمها وقد خرج والدهن إلى السوق وسيرجع عن قريب باللحم والخضروات-

الأم تفرح ببناهٌا، فإنّهن يخدمنها كثيرا ومارغبن قطٌّ في طعام لذيذ أَو لباس فاخر، أعمامهن (paternal uncles) وأخوالمن (maternal uncles) يفرحون بأعمالمن، وما غضبوا عليهن قطُ، هؤلاء البنات يقرأن ويكتبن في بيتهن ويفعلن كما يأمرهنّ أكابرهن ويعلمن أنّ السعادة والفوز فى طاعة اللّ
 وصابرة عليه ورجال الأسرة يعملون .مشقّةٍ طوالَ (whole) النهار ويرقدون

، ولا يحسدون أحدا. فيشكرون الله وبنعمته لا يكفرون-

## A Poor Family

The mother and her daughters got up from sleep and after the Fair Prayers began to work. Just now one of them is sweeping, the other is washing dishes, pots and spoons. The eldest is cooking along with her mother while their father has gone to the market and will soon return with meat and vegetables.
The mother is happy with her daughters for they serve her much and are not inclined to tasty food or embellished clothes. Their uncles and aunts are happy from their work and were never angry with them. These girls study and write at their homes and do as their elders tell them. They know that well-being and success is in the obedience of Allah and His Messenger and in following the admonition of their elders. This poor family is satisfied with its fate and is patient over it. The males of this family work hard the whole day and sleep at night in peace and blessing. They do not know mischief or deceit, and do not envy anyone. To Allah they give thanks and do not deny His bounties.

أسئلة:
من يكنس؟ من يغسِل القدور؟ من يطبخ؟ من ذهب إلى السوق؟ متى يرجع؟ لماذا تفرح الأم ببناهًا؟ هل والدهن يغضب عليهن؟ لماذا يذهبن إلى المدر سة؟ فى أي شىء هن جيدات؟ هل يحسد رجالَ الأسرةٍ أحدا؟ أ يكفرون بنعمة
الله؟ هل غُسْلُ الأواني نقيصة؟ أَ تاكلون بالملاعق أَم باليد؟

## IX. Read the following and answer the questions:


اللمادمة: أعجنُ (kneed) الدقيق (dough) يا سيّدلِ؟
فريدةُ: میى غْبزينّْ (make bread) سيّدُُكِ يذهب اليومَصباحا إلى المكتب (office) المنادمة: آَعَبين (think, assume) ياسيدتي أَين جالسةٌ (sitting) بدون (without)


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { خ: مالثّثها آنفا } \\
& \text { فريدةُ: هل كَنــــِ (swept) غُرفَة الطعامِّ } \\
& \text { خ: لا، ماكنسُـُها } \\
& \text { تُم سألت فريدة جميع البنات عن أَشغالِنَّ } \\
& \text { الامّ: ماذا ثَفعلن الآنب؟ } \\
& \text { البنات: نقرأ الدروسَ ونكتب واجباتِ المدرس } \\
& \text { الام: هل تحمبن أَنّ العر بية صعبّبٌ }
\end{aligned}
$$

البنات:- لا، إفا ليس كذلك، (not like that) بل الناس جعلوها (made it) صعبةٍ

## أسئلة



 عذاب؟
الفعل المضارع - r

They disbelieve in Allah or will disbelieve.
يَكْفُرُونَ باللّهِ
You (all) show or will show mercy to them all.

Will you read it for me?

كَل تَقْرَا كِيْ؟ $\begin{gathered}\text { You all memorize it } \\ \text { or will memorize. }\end{gathered}$


You all dislike (disapprove) him or will dislike.


He shows or will
show mercy to him.
يرَهُمُهُ

You witness against them or will witness.
You ride or will ride a car
They ask you (O Muhammad) "about the orphans?"

I will open the door for them when they come near it.

One who spreads mischievous talk will never enter Paradise.

Medicine benefits by Allah's leave
Does He not know who created?
Allah does not show mercy to him who does not show mercy to the people.

Allah stretches some people's provision while for some, He restricts.

(

Allah destroys (the benefits of) usury and wealth increases with charity.

The maid servant opens the door and insects enter the house.

The girl admonishes the boy and the boy makes fun of her.

The man goes to the market while the woman enters into the kitchen.

I do not own anything except for the clothes on me.

The child opens the book, makes figures in it, then breaks the pen and plays with the cat.

Allah created man and created the earth and the heavens, and creates what they do not know. But people worship idols.

يَمْحَقُق اللُّ الرِّبَا ويَزِيدُ المَالُ


الَّرَأَةُ تَدْخُلُ المَطْبَخْ أَنا لا أَمْلِكُ شَيئاً إلأٌ الثّوبَ بِ الُّذِى عَلَّيَّ


بالقِطَّة.



(ry-الفعل المضارع-Y)

## EXERCISES

## I. Translate the following giving all harakaat:

ير كبون السيارة. هل تذهبون؟ تكتبين فيه. يأخذهم. نتر كهم على حالهم. يغضب عليهم. تقرأ لهم. هل تتركون محارم (the forbidden) الله؟ يا أيها الذين آمنوا لِمَ (why) ما لا تفعلون؟ يا أيها الر:جل: هل تأكل من رزق الله وتشرب (say) من نعمة الله وتشكر الأصنام (idols) ؟ الذين يعملون الصالحات يدخلون الجننة والذين يكفرون يدخلون النار وهم فيها يغلدون (live for ever). هل علمت أن الدنيا هي دار (for the العمل والآخرة دار المزاء (recompense) ؟ وهل للكافرين (place) (intercede) هم؟؟ إن في خلق السموات والأرض والفلك unbelievers) (sails) التي (ship) يأكلون ويشربون كالبهائم (like animals)، يحسبون أفم من القرد (monkey) ، وهم الذين عن آيات الله يغفلون. يا أيها المسلم كتب الله عليك (has made obligatory) الصالاة والز كاة وكتب أنه لا يدخل المنة إلا مؤمن فمن سمع الأذان فعليه بابلماعة (رمضان) فعليه بالصيام، فإنه ليس (month) (رمن شههد الشهر (congregation) الإيمان بغير طاعة (obedience) ، وأنه ليس الإيمان بالقول ولكن بالقلب المُطِيِ (in the light of Islamic law) ولا يخسر (العمل الصحيح في ضوء الشريعة (obedient)
إلا الذين كفروا.

## II. Translate the following. Give all the harakaat.

Where are you going? He is eating the apple he did not earn.
What's a thief doing in the Parliament بارلمان)?
Satan promised the pagans he will help them in Badar.
The wife said to her husband: Your children and my children are beating our children.
Men go to the mosque for the obligatory Prayers. Women Pray at home.
(Y-Y-الفعل المضار ع-Y)

When they speak the truth, the people do not believe in them, but when they speak lies they believe in them.

## III. Answer in Arabic:

هل تعلم أَنْ المحادثة مفيدة؟ أَ تعلمون أَنْ الرّياضة ضرورية؟ لِماذا تعبد اللّ؟ أين يقرأ الأولاد؟ هل بدأت الكتاب العربي؟ هل لعِبْ التاميذ؟ من أَختمت شغلك؟ هل تعلم أنْ الشكر للهُ واجبٌٌ

## IV. Translate the following:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 1-1 مَن كَسَر الأَصنام؟ 1 } \\
& 1 \text { - بائع الأصنام } \\
& \text { قَبْلَ أَيَامِ كَثِيْرٌ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ك }
\end{aligned}
$$

, كَّا

## Who Broke the Idols?

1. The idol-seller

Many years ago
There was a man in a town, very famous
The name of this man was Aazar
Aazar used to sell idols
And there was in this town a house - a very big house
In this house were idols - very many idols
And the people used to prostrate themselves before these idols
(- الفعل المضارع--r)

And Aazar used to prostrate himself before these idols Aazar used to worship these idols.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { r- وَلَدُ آزَرَ } \\
& \text { وَكَانَ آزرُ لَهُ وَلدُ رَشْيْلٌ، رَشْيْدٌ جِدًّا } \\
& \text { وَكَانَ اسْمُ هَذَا الْوَلَدِ إبْرَاهِمْمْ. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { وَيرَى النَّاسَ يَعْبُدُونَ الأَصْنَامَ. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## 2. Aazar's son

Aazar had a bright, well-behaved son - very bright and well-behaved indeed The name of this son was Ibrahim Ibrahim would see the people prostrating themselves before the idols He would to see them worshipping the idols Ibrahim knew that the idols were stones (Translate the rest)

وَكَانَ يَعْرِفُ أَنْ الأصنْامَ لاَ تَتَكَلَّمُ وَلَا تَسْمْعُ. وَكَانَ يَعرِفُ أَنَّ الأَصْنَامَ لَا تَضُرُ وَلاَ تَنْفَعُ. وَكَانَ يرَى أَنَّ الذُّبَابَ يَجْلِسُ عَلَى الأَصْنَامِ فَلاَ تَدْفَعُع وَكَانَ يَرَى الْفَأْرَ يَأْكُلُ طَعَامَ الأَصْنَامِ فَالْ تَمْنَعُ وُكَانَ إبْرَاهِمْمُ يَقُوْلُ في نَفْسِهِ لِمَاذَا يَسْجُدُ النَّاسُ لِلأَصْنَامِ؟ وَكَانَ إْبْرَاهِمْ يُسْأَلَلُ نَفْسَهُ: لِمَاذَا يَسْأَلُ النَّاسُ الأَصْنَامْ؟

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 苜 } \\
& \text { وكَانَ إْبَاهِيْمُ يَقُوْلُ لِوَالِمِْم: } \\
& \text { يَا أَبِي لِمَاذاَ تَعْبُُ هَذِهِ الأَصْنَامَ؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

## (الفعل المضارع-Y-Y (-



Note that increasingly you will have to refer to the Lexicon supplied with these lessons for meanings of new words. Our aim here is to give you the meaning of such words as have gone transformation, and you have not yet learnt the rules.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { seller } \\
& \text { كان = was } \\
& \text { famous } \\
& \text { مضارع = of مَييعُ } \\
& \text { (مفرد = صنم) أصنام } \\
& \text { رشيد = nice, dutiful, well-behaved. } \\
& \text { مضارع = يَرَى of مأَى meaning, he saw } \\
& \text { تَتَكْلُمُ = they (fem.) speak }
\end{aligned}
$$

(الفعل المضارع-Y-Y)

مضار ع = تَدْفَعْع
مضارع = يأكُلُ
نَفْسِه = his self ( with $=$ = within himself)
لِمَاذَا = why?
مضار ع = يَنْأَلُ
مضار ع = يَقولُ
أَبي = my father
لأَيِّ = for what (for what reason)
مضارع = تَضَعُ $\quad$ وَضَعْ meaning, he placed
حِينَبْذ $=$ in that event, then, at that time.

## V. Make maadi of mudaare` and mudaare` of maadi.

كنَست، تعجنّ، طبَختنّ، ملأتِ، غسلت، تغسلين، يصنَعن، لِِبن، ترقدين، سترت، شهِلتنّ، تسهُر، أَسهرَ، صنعتُ، تستُرون، صدقتِك كذبتمَ تمدحون، يملئون، تخبزن، أَشهدَ، تعلَمن، ضحِكت

## VI. Convert maadi to mudaare` and mudaare` to maadi.

سألتم، طبحـت، نطبخ، تعبدون، حذروا، حذِرت، يمدَحون، سڭنوا، نصرنا، زرعتم، نصنع، حصلت، تحلبون، شهلدنا، جعلت، تلبس، يمزحون، قطفوا، يأذنون، غسلت•، نزلوا، نَبتَت، أَسكت، عَرَفتِ، عَرَفتن، حَذِرتن، طَبَخـتِ، حَذَرتِ، صَنعتِ، قَرَأت، طَبْتَن، صَنعتن، قَرَأتُنَّ

## VII. Read the following and answer the questions that follow:

رشيدة تنهض من النوم صباحا وتعبد الله، ثم تقرأ القرآن، فان قراءةَ القرآنٍ كلْ صباحِ سبَبُ (means) بَركَةٍ. وبعد الإفطار تَبَس لباسا نظيفا ساذجا يستر (covers) حسْهُا، وتحذر (avoids) لباسا رقيقا (thin) ضِيِّقا (tight) ، وتذهب إلى المدرسة
 رياضية، ولاتشهد (watch/be present) دارَ المَيالةِ (theatre) ، فإن ظاهرها


 يَشهَدن الــيـيا ويسهرن (stay awake) اللليَ ولايرغبن إلى الصلاة، ولا إلى أعمال (لا البيت ويلبسن ثيابا رقيقة لا تستر أحسامَهن، بل يقرأن الكتب الانكليزية كثيرا ويفخرن (take pride) هِا. لايقرأن القرآن ولايذكرن الله ورسولَه فهن جيِّدات فى اللسان (language) الإنكليزى، وماقرأن شيئا في اللسان العربى، وهن يعلَمْن أن العربية لسان القرآنٍ والقر آن هدايةٌ للمسلمين.

## اسئلة:

متى تنهض رشيدة؟ أَ ترقد الى طلوع الثــى؟ هل تقر أ كتابا فى العربية؟
 أ تمدحها المعلمات؟ هل تقرأ أختك كتب الع العربي؟ هل تطبخ الطعام؟ أتقرأ المسلمات كبا عربية؟ أ يرغبن الى اللسان الأإنكليز؟؟ هل يسهرن الليل؟ أ تسهرالبنات للدين؟

## الماضى والمضارع

الأمثلة:

The boy came out of his house and went to the market. He will return after a while and go to the school. When he returns to the house he will go out once again for the playground, and will retum around Maghrib and after night prayer and little studies, he will enter the bedroom. He speaks truth and does not tell lies. He prays and does not disbelieve. He studies and does not ignore. Thus he is an exemplary child.

O boy! Do you think Allah created you in vain? And that He will not question you about His blessings? Do you not know - O my dear one - that the world is ephemeral, and Hereafter ever lasting? So he who sowed today, will reap tomorrow in the Hereafter. And he who is not inclined to good works today, will never enter into Paradise. Do you remember that as you entered the world you were crying while the people around you were laughing. It is upon you then that when you leave this world you are laughing, while the people are crying.
And O women, who have given up the veil, and pray not to Allah, do you think you will succeed? No, by God you will be the losers

خَرَج الوَلَدُ مِنْ بَيْتهِ وذَهَبَ إِلى السُوقِ و سوف يَرْجعُ بَعْدَ قَلِيلٍ وَيَذْهَبُ إِلى المَدْرَسَةِ


 يُصْدُقُ ولا يَكْذِبُ - يَبْبُدُ ولا يَكْفُرُ - يَقْرَا
ولا يَجْهَلُ فَهو وَلَدُّ مِثالِيُّيٌ

يا أَيُها الوَكَلُّ! هَل تحْْـَبُ أَنْ اللَّ خَلقَكَ عَبَّاه وَلا يَسْألُكَ غَدًا عَنْ نَعْهِهِ أليسَ لَكَ عِلْمٌ - ياحِبِيى- إنْ الدُنُيا فانِيَةٌ والآخِرَةً



 يَضْحَكُونَ - فَعَليكَ إِذاً، أنْ تَخْرُجَ مِنَ الدُّنيا تَضْحَكُُ والنَّاسُ يَيُكُونَنَ

ويا نساءُ اللاتى تَتْرُكْنَ الِِجَابَ ولا تَعْبُدنَ

(rr -الماضى والمضارع)
in the life of this world. But if you knew that in the Hereafter there will be a great punishment, if Allah will not forgive you. Therefore, upon you is the veil, Prayers and charity.
O people! Indeed it is Allah who has created you and provides you of the good things. Why do you then prostrate yourselves to the cow, the sun, the moon, and everything which owns no

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { الحَياةِ الدُّنيا ولَكِنْ زَ عَلِمُنْ أَنٍ في الأَخِرَّ } \\
& \text { عَذَابٌ عَظِيمّ إنْ لَمْ يَغْفِر اللهُ كَكُنَّ. فَعَيكُنَّ } \\
& \text { الحِجابَ، والصلاةَ والصدقاتِ. }
\end{aligned}
$$

 authority in the heavens or in the earth; while you disbelieve in Allah the Mighty, the Wise. Can you not think?

## EXERCISES

## I. Translate the following giving all harakaat:

يرحمك الله - لماذا فعلت هكذا ؟ هل عبدت الله الليل كله وتر كت صلاة الفجر؟
 (by my Lord (yes) وربي (clean) من الحديقة؟ إين (الهواء النقي (الهحل order that) قد فعلت. ولكن دخل فأرٌ من الباب فخخرجت أَهْرُبُ (to escape) منه ووَقَعْتُ fall)
 (dear) والماء. أشكركِ على كل حال يا ابني العزيزة (mud) ربنا إنك تعلم ما في أنفسنا ولا نعلم ما في نفسك. إن الله كتب عليكم الجهاد وعسى (it is possible) أن تكرهوا شيئا وهو خير (good) لكم والله يعلم وأنتم لا تعلمون. المنافقون يكلفُون (to swear) بالله أفـم آمنوا ولكنهم يكذبون ، ليس الإعمان
(المr الماضى والمضارع)

بالقول ولكنّه طاعة الله في الأمر (matters) كله. يرفع الله الذين آمنوا بصدقهم (because of their truthfulness) ، والذين يسمعون ثم لا يعملون أولئك هم يخسرون


## I. Translate the following giving all harakaat:

1. The cat is sitting on the wall. She is looking at the boys playing below her. She is following the football with her eyes. She hears a loud voice and looks there. It is a woman. And then appears from behind her, her husband. He holds a cup in his right hand. She fears him. He lifts his left hand and the cat lifts her ears. Another act from him and she will be going. There is no peace in the world.
2. The sun is rising from the east. The birds are on the trees. The men are walking out. They are going to the fields and markets. The women are working within the homes. The girls are laughing in the street. The baby is crying in the room. The mother is angry. She sat the whole night besides the baby. At midnight the husband went to the doctor. The doctor came in to their home. He saw the baby. He said the baby needs some water. The baby is again crying in the morning. Mother gives it some water. The baby is still crying. 'The baby needs milk and not water', shouts the husband. 'Why does our father shout?' the daughter asks herself.

## III - Translate the following:


(rr-الماضى والمضار ع)


قَال إِبْاهَهِمْمُ :أَنَا سِقِمْمٌ






## 3. Ibrahim Breaks the Idols

And came the day of festivities and the people were merry
The people came out for festivities, and the children came out
Ibrahim's father came out and said to Ibrahim:
Will you not come out with us?
Ibrahim answered: I am unwell
The people went and Ibrahim was left in the house
Ibrahim came to the idols and said to the idols: Will you not speak? Do you not hear?
This is food and drink. Will you not eat? Will you not drink?
But the idols remained silent because they are stones that do not speak
Ibrahim said: What is with you (that) you do not speak?
(Complete rest of the translation)

(r

-     - من فعل هذا؟

 وَلَكِنْ تَعَجَّبَ النَّاسُ وَدَهِشُوا. وَتَأَسَفِ النَّاسُ وَغَضِبْوُا. قَالُوا :مَنْ فَعَلَ هَذَا بآلِهِتِنَّبٌ

 قَالَ :بَلْ فَعَلَهُ كَبْرُهُمْ هَذْا فَاسْتُوُومُمْ إِنْ كَانُوْا يَنْطِقُونَ وُكَانَ النَّاسُ يُعْرُوْو نَ أَنُ الأَصْنَامَ حِجَارَةً.


 وَأَنُ الصَّنَمَ الأَكْبْرَ لاَ يَمْلِرُ أَنْ يَكْسِرَ الأَصْنَامَمَ

 وُكَيْفَ تَسْأَلْونَ الأَصْنَامَ وَإنَّهَا لاَ تَنْطِقُ وَلَا تَسْمَعُ؟ أَلَا تَفْهَمُونَ شَيْئُاٌُ أَفَلَا تَعْقِلُوْنَبْ

وَسْكَتَ النَّاسُ وَخَجلُوْا!
(من الكتاب: قَصَصُ الِّْيِّن - لأبي الحمسن علي الندوي - البزء الأول، مع تصرف
(Y (الماضیى والمضارع)

## مُعالين الكَلِماتِ الجَديدةِ

= عَلْقُق= he hung,
= مَشَى = يمْْشْي = he was regretfulked,
= he was surprised, wondered, لَّعَجِّبَ = he intended,
 إنْ كانوا = if they can
درس £ Y


## (The Imperative and the Negative Imperative - Second Person)

## Clues:

If you have understood the مضارع then you should have little difficulty in understanding this lesson which deals with how imperatives are made.
The method is simple. You take the Second Person مضارع, remove the first letter and add an alif. For example, from تُكْتُبُ you remove and add it You get أَكْبُبا, which means: write (i.e., you are issuing a command to another [male, singular] to write).
A few points may be noted.

1. If an imperative is Second Person, you have to take the Second Person مضار ع for your modifications. (We will deal with the Third Person Imperative later).
2. The first letter of an Imperative is always an alif.
3. The last letter always carries a "sukoon".
4. As for the "harakah" of the alif at the beginning, it will depend on the "harakah" on the middle letter in the $\quad$ form. If the "harakah" of the middle letter is "dammah", then, the alif in Imperative will also have a "damma". If it has a "kasrah" then alif of Imperative will also have a "kasrah". So also the "nasab."
E.g, from خَضْرِبْ we make (Note that J [the middle letter] has a "kasrah"). Therefore, the alif of the Imperative will have a "kasrah". So, from "َضْرِبُ (in the Second Person) we will make the Imperative as إضْرِب" (with the alif given a "kasrah".

 alif having a "dammah)."
5. Note that the "harakah" of the middle letter in مضارع form is itself unpredictable (in the sense that certain grammatical rules decide what will be the "harakah" of the middle letter of the ماضي when it is converted into a عضار ( ). But, the "harakah" of the "alif" of the imperative is predetermined by

the "harakah" of the middle letter in the مضارع form.
6. If you look at the table now, you will find that it carries the Imperative for feminine form also. Well, look harder, and you will discover the rule as quite simple.
7. The Negative Imperative is far simpler. It is also made from the Second Person مضارع and is done by adding a ل at the beginning, and giving a "sukoon" to the last letter. There ends the matter.
 appear at the end of the verb in the مضار ع form) - except the feminine plural are also dropped out in making Imperative or Negative Imperative, as you will notice in the table.

All this sounds pretty complicated. Yes, but only when you get to know of them the first time. Yet there is a simpler way out. Just memorize the table that follows. Afterwards, usage will teach you the "harakaat." (After the previous two tables, this is the third most important table. You need not memorize a fourth).
Also, once you have done a few dozen examples, the whole thing will become as clear as the Arabian summer sky at noon.
(

|  |  | جلول الأَمْرِ والنُهْهِ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| النَّهُجْ <br> Negative imperative | الأَمْرُ Imperative |  |  |
| لا تَفْعْلْ <br> Don't do | $\begin{gathered} \text { افْعْلَ } \\ \text { Do } \end{gathered}$ | Single | $\begin{gathered} \text { M } \\ \text { مذكر } \end{gathered}$ |
| لا تَفْعَلا <br> You two don't do | إِفْعَ Y <br> You two do | Dual |  |
| لا تَفْعْلُوْا <br> You all don't do | إِفَلُوْا <br> You all do | Plural |  |
| لا تَفْعَلِي <br> Don't do | $\begin{gathered} \text { إْفَلِلي } \\ \text { Do } \end{gathered}$ | Single | F <br> مؤنث |
| لا تَفْفَكا <br> You two don't do | اْفْعَ <br> You two do | Dual |  |
| لا تَفْعَلْ <br> You all don't do | إِفْلْنَ <br> You all do | Plural |  |

(1)


| Read (sing. masc.) |  | تَقْرْ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Read (plural, masc.) | إقْرَؤُوا | تَقْوَوْوْنِ |
| Read (sing. female) | إِرْئِي | تَقْرِيْينَ |
| Read (plural, female) | إقرَأْنَ | تَقْرَأْنَ |


| Worship (sing. masc.) | 'اعْبٌدْ | تَعْبُ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Worship (plural, masc.) | اعْبُدوا | تَعْبُوُونَ |
| Worship (sing. female) | اعْبُدِي | تَعْبٌِّدِنِ |
| Worship (plural, female) | أُعْبدْنِ | تَعْبُدْنِ |


| Wash (sing. masc.) | اِغْسِلْ | تَغْسلُ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Wash (plural, masc.) | إغْسِوا | تَغْسلوِّ |
| Wash (sing. female) | إغسِلِي | تَغْسِلِنَ |
| Wash (plural, female) | إِسْلْ | تَغْسِلْ |
| Eat (sing. masc.) | كُلْ | تَأْكُ |

(




Worship Allah alone and succeed.
O lad! When you enter into the mosque, enter with the right (foot), sit down after two cycles of Prayer, and read the Quran or remember Allah a little. And do not do

يا آليها الوَلَدُ! إذا دَخَلْتْتَ المَسْجَدَ فادْخُلْ بِيَمِينكَ، وَاجْلِسْ بَعْدَ رَكَعَيْنِ وَآْرَا القُرَآَنَ أَوْ اذُكْرُ اللَّ قَلِلاُ، وَلا تَظْلِمْ
(若
injustice to anyone of the people, for Allah will never forgive injustice. And know that Allah will help the oppressed.

O Girl! Keep quite while elders are talking, listen to them and sit properly before the people. Work with your hands, wash the dishes after the dinner and know that success lies in obedience. And read a little of the Prophet's words before sleep, and bow down with those who bow down.

And O Women! When you enter into the markets cover your bodies fully, and do not go out of your houses but for extreme need. Seek knowledge in free time, for, most women know nothing about their religion, nor do they know a single sentence from the Prophet. Hold fast unto the recitation of the Qur'an everyday, so that you succeed in many affairs of the world and the Hereafter.


## EXERCISES

I. Make the imperative of the following in all four clauses, giving all harakaat and the meaning. Those given in the past tense form may not
(
be written down in present/future tense. You can directly write the four clauses in imperative:


## II. Translate the following:





 يا بين إسر ائيلَ اَذْكُرُورا نْعْمَةَ اللهَ عَلْيُكُمْ
 قال الله تعالى: يا أيها الذين آمنوا (who have believed) كُّورا مِن طِيَّاتِ مَا رَزَفْتَاكُمْ وَاثْدُكُروا للَ (الآية)






(新-Y乏)





## III. Make Imperative:



## IV. Translate the following:








O boy. Get up from sleep early in the morning; Pray to Allah for He created you and nourished you with the good things and guarded you against every misfortune. Do not neglect the Prayers ever. And go to the school on its time and sit in the classroom in a goodly way (complete the rest)

## V. Read the passage and answer the following questions.

ا- السِّافَلُ


(3)

اَبْيْض، وَهُوْ حُلوٌ جحدًّا، فِيْها بُزُورُ لَونُها أَسودُ. ألستِّافَلُ فَاكِهُة الفُقراء، فهم



Indian custard apple is a fruit. Its tree grows in the Deccan (South India). Its shape is nearly round and its skin is thick, not thin. Its color is green and it has little circles, like eyes. In its inside is white pulp which is very sweet. Inside it are seeds whose color is black. Indian custard apple is the fruit of the poor so they eat it much, for it is quite cheap. This is by Allah's bounty that He provided them with a sweet cheap fruit. Therefore, thank Allah O people for this bounty.

أسئلة:
كيف شكل الستافل؟ أين يُبت شجر الستّافل؟ ما لونه؟ كيف قشرْ؟ مَن يأكله كثيرّ؟؟
 أَ قطفتم الستافل تارة؟
r
The Milkman
اُنْظُرُ كَيْفَ يَحْلُبُ اللُّبَانُ، البَقَرَةُ وَاقِفَةٌ وَعِجْلُها (calf) وَرَاءَها واللّبانُ جَالِسِ،

 (of the (و هل تعرف أنْ السَّمَنَ البَلَديَّ (ghee/fat) (خال مِن الكولِتُرول؟ countryside)

(

أسئلة:
ما ذا في يده؟ ماذا يفعل اللّبّان؟ هل أكلتم الزبْدهَ؟ هل هو واقفٌ الســن؟ أَين العِجْل؟ هل البقرة جالسةٌ؟ من أي شيء تصنَع الزبدة؟ أَين الإناء؟
VI. Translate the following:

الأم تنصـح
حبيبي! (my dear) انت بنتٌ طيبةٌ، انضي من النوم صباحا وَاعبدي اللهُ معي، لأنه (will make خلقكِ ورزقلكِ من الطيبات، فكلي واشربي واصحبي الصالـحاتِ بتعلــــكِ ، (Westerners) صالحةً، والبسي ثيابا نظيفةً ساذجة، واحذَري لباس الفربخيات you)


الأكابر .
بناتي:- إِحدن الله واشكرن له وَاعبُدنه، واصحبن بناتٍ طيبات، واذهبن الى المدرســــة فى عربتها، وَاحذرن الوقاحة (shamelessness) ، وادرُسن علوما غختلفة نافعة، وارغبن الى دراسة العربي، لسان القرآن والـــــديث. بنـــاتي، علــــكن بـــالطبخ والتطريــز (stitching) ، واحذَرن الكــل عن التربية المترلية فإن كـــثيراً (embroidery) من البنات يغفلن عنها ولا يرغبن إليها، فإها عندهنّ نقيصة.
VII. State the meaning:
 حُذْ، إسأَل (سَلْ) إحذَر، إِتَّع، إِْلُ، إِنْع، إخْتم.

## (The Negative Imperative)

| Do not read (sing. masc.) | لا تَقْرْا | تَفْرَا |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Do not read (plural, masc.) | لا تَقْرَؤُوا | تَقْرَؤونَونَ |
| Do not read (sing. female) | لا تَقْرَكِيكِ | تَقْرْيَنَ |
| Do not read (plural, female) | لا تَقْرَأْنَ | تَقْرَأْنَ |


| Do not worship (sing. masc.) | لا تَعْبٌد | تَعْبُد |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Do not worship (plural, masc.) | لا تَعْبُدوا | تَعْبُدونِ |
| Do not worship (sing. female) | لا تَعْبُّي | تَعْبُدِينَ |
| Do not worship (plural, female) | لا تَبْدٌْنْ | تَعْبُنْنِ |


| Do not eat (sing. masc.) | لا تَأكُّ | تَأُكُ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Do not eat (plural, masc.) | لا تَآكُوا | تَأكُونِ |
| Do not eat (sing. female) | لا تَأكُلِي | تَأكُلِينَ |
| Do not eat (plural, female) | لا تَأْكُلْنِ | تَأْكُنْ |
| Do not enter (sing. masc.) | لا تَدْخُلْ | تَدْخُلُ |




O boy! Do not read in weak light nor sit in half sunlight and half in shade, but rather, sit, either in the sun (wholly) or in the shade (wholly). And, do not ask people for their things, for if you asked them, they disapprove asking. Instead, ask Allah. And, do not admonish anyone while neglecting to practice it yourself. Rather, first put into practice yourself and thereafter admonish others. Then people will listen to you and speak well of you. And, O Muslims! Do not get near an orphan's wealth. And do not kill your children out of fear of poverty and do not listen to

music for it is from Shaytan.

Mother to Son: My dear son! Do not enter a house of our friends except after you have greeted the host. When you enter, do not sit in the centre of the sitting room, do not take the central chair, do not sit down before the people have sat down, do not look into the corners of the room. Laugh, when people laugh, but do not laugh with a loud voice, do not read when people are conversing, do not clip your nails with your teeth, do not play with your clothes, do not eat but from dishes before you, do not raise yourself from the dinner table until the people are finished with their food, do not wash your hands before the elders, and do not leave the house until you have sought the permission of the host. Now you have heard the visiting manners. Say to me how you will enter and how you will leave?

The Son: O my mother, may Allah preserve you, thank you for the manners of visiting your friends, but as for me, I shall never ever enter the house of a friend of yours.

الأُمُ لِوْكَدِها: يا وَكَدِى المَبِيبُ - لا تَدْنُُلْ




 ضحك الناس ولكن لا تَضْحَكَكْ بِصْوْتِ







تُخرْ ع P



(

## EXERCISES

I. Make the negative imperative of the following in all four clauses, giving all harakaat and the meaning. Those given in the past tense form may not be written down in present/future tense. You can directly write the four clauses in imperative:
 تَغْسِلْنَ تَعْسِلِينَ تَغْسِلُونَ تَعْسِلُ سَخَتَ: لا تَسْكُتْ سَأَلَ ظَلَمَ بَخْلَ جَمَعْ لَبِسَ جَلَسَ

## II. Translate the following giving all the harakaat :

ا. يا بني إسرائيل اذكروا نعمة الله عليكم ولا تكفروا به، الله يككم بينكم يوم القيامة بالمق.
 جميعا. (الآية)
r. لا بَعلوا مع الله إلما آخر ولا تقتلوا أولاد كم، إن الله يرزقكم جميعا، ولا تأكلوا أموال الناس بالباطل.
ع. لا تبخل، ولا بحمع المال فإن البخل من الثيطان وقد قال الله تبارك وتعالى: كلوا واشربوا ولا تُسْرِفُوا (do not waste)
 يابنتى:- إلهنا إله واحد فلا بُعلي مع مع الله الها آخرك، واشكري له فاعبدِيه ولاتكفري بها فانه يرزقكِ رزقا حسنا، ويكظظكِ من كل آفة، ولاتصحَبي البنات الخبيئات، فإنّ
 يكرهوفا، ولا تدخلي في محادثة الناس، ولاتضحكي عند الاكابر، ولاتلبي وقت القراءة، ولاتقرءي وقت اللعب.

$$
\text { ( } 0 \text {-النـهى) }
$$





 الككلماتِ ولاتفلن عنها فان البناتِ الطيبات يعملن بنصائح الامهات.

## III. Read the following and answer the questions below:

## القرآن الججيد The Noble Qur'an







 يَرْزَقُكْمْ مِّنَ السَّمَاءِ وَالَأرْضِ؟

Your Lord is One Lord. He is the God in the heavens and the earth. Allah created you from dust and made out of your homes a place of rest and created everything. Eat and drink from Allah's providence and remember His bounties upon you. O my people, worship Allah, you have no deity besides Him. O people server your Lord and do righteous deeds. Do not prostrate yourselves to the sun nor to the moon, but prostrate yourselves to Allah. Allah knows best about you. He knows your hidden and open. Surely, Allah is well-seeing of the slaves. Know it that Allah is severe in chastisement and that Allah is very Forgiving, very Kind. Your Lord has written mercy upon Himself. And Allah will guard you against the people. Allah will judge between you on the Day of
( Yo النهى)

Standing. Surely, Allah's promise is true. And do not conceal the testimony (of His Oneness). Who nourishes you from the heaven and earth?


## IV. Make negative imperative of the following:

تُعمَّ، تخدِمَ تَعصرِ، تصنَع، تحذَر، تصحَب، تمدَح، تطبخ، تعصِب، ترفَع، بَحمعَ، تكتب، تطبخن، تعصبين، رفعتم، جمعت، تصنع، تَحذرَ، تترك؛ تكسَّون، تعبلين، غسلن، تشهلد، تعجنين، تكنُس، لبَمتِ تصحـب، ركعت، تصدפ، تكذبين.

## الفاعِلُ والْمَفْعولُ بِهِ

(The Subject and the Object)

## Grammatical rules:

This lesson deals with the question of how to identify a subject (doer) and an object (one upon whom it was done). In the sentence "Da'ud killed Jaalut" the subject is Da'ud, and the object Jaalut.
In Arabic we do it by giving the two, different "harakaat". The subject ( فاعل ) always carries a "dammah", whereas, an object ( مفعول به ) boasts of a "fat-ha"! So, in the sentence, أَمَرَ الرُّحُلَ زَيْةُ who is the subject and who the object? Who ordered whom? Easy, the noun which has a "dammah" is the فاعل (subject) while the noun which has a "fat-ha" is the مفعرل به (object). In this case, زيذ is the مفعول به and الرجلَ is the . So, the translation would be, "Zayd ordered the man."

Da'ud killed Jalut
Zaynab ate the bread
Umar constructed a mosque in Jerusalem.
Did you, (O women), hear the voices of your children or not?
Call upon Allah, morning and evening.



They have recognized the murdered (person) but the murderer escaped.

The student watched the competition.

Have you read the new book?


## EXERCISES

## I. Give harakaat, translate and underline the "object" in the following:

دحل الْمُعَلْمُ حجرةَ الدرس، وجلس على الكرسي، وبعد قليل قام (stood up)
وقال (said) : "أيها الطُّاكَبُ والطالبات، ها أنا (here I am) أمامكم اليومَ بدرسٍ جديد وهو درس مُهِمٌّ (important) جدا، اسمعوه مين بِاعْنِّاء (carefully) ، لأنه إذا ما فهمتم هذا الدرس ما تفهمون الدروس اليت بعده، فاتمعوا بِدِّةٍ (closely, precisely)، ولا


وبعد هذا الكلام درَّى (for an hour) - لِّهاعة) واحتَهَدَ فيه (labored himself)
ولَّ (when) انتَهَى (ended) الدرس سألهم: "مل فهمتم الدرس البديد؟" قالوا:
"نعم" فقال لهم: "إذا (in that case) ، احفظوه جيدأ لأنني سائلٍ عنه غدًا، فهل (لمد
 البنات وسألمن: "هل أنتن فهتن الدرس؟" قلن: "نعم"، - "وتَحْفَظْنَه؟" - قلن: "إن شاء الله، نعم".
وسمع المعلم الضَّحكَ من تِلْمِيِذ (a student) فغضب وسأل: "منٍ الذي
 (got up) تلميذٌ وقال: "أنا يا سيدي". فسأل العلم التلميذَ ( "ولِمَ ضحِكَ؟ْ". فقال التلميذ: "لأنك اليوم درَّسْتَ الدرس القدهُ ونـن قد حفظنا
 فنظر المعلم إلى البنات وسألهن: "مل هم صادقون؟" قُلن: "نعم"، فقال المعلم: "هل عرفتن هذا في البداية (beginning) أم لا؟" فقلن: "نعم". فقال المعلم: "فِلَمَ سَكِّنّ حتى الآن؟ هل ضاع (wasted) الوقت أَم لا؟" قلن: "نعم".
 (الوقت؟" قالوا: "نعم". فنظر المعلم إليهم وخرج من (ended) هل انتهى (in any case)
 (الأولاد بينَهم صَفْحَةٌ صفحةً (divided)

## 2. Translate the following:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { إِجْتَمَعَ النَّاسُ وُقَالُوا :مَاْذَا نَفْعَلُ؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$



## 6. A Cold Fire

People got together and said: What shall we do?
Surely, Ibrahim has broken the idols and has insulted the gods
The people asked: What should Ibrahim's punishment be?
What is Ibrahim's penalty?
The answer was: Burn him and support your gods
And that is how it was. They started a fire and threw Ibrahim into it
But Allah helped Ibrahim and said to the fire:
O fire! Be you cold and secure for Ibrahim
And that is how it was. The fire was cold and secure for Ibrahim
The people saw that the fire would not harm Ibrahim
They saw that Ibrahim was happy and safe
The people were amazed and wondered.
(Complete the rest)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { - }
\end{aligned}
$$

وَلَمَّا غَبَ الْكَوْكَبُ، قَالَ إِبْرَمْيْمُ :لَا، هَذَا كَيْسَ بِربِّي!







 وَلَا يَنْصرُنِ الْكَوْكَبُ لاَنَّهُ ضَعْيْ". وَلَا يَنْصُرْنى الْقَمَرُ لانَّهُ ضَعْيفِّ.
 وَيَّصْرُرِنى اللُّه
لأَنْ اللهُ حَيٌِ لاَ يَمُوْتُ.
وَبَاق لاَ يَيِْْبُ.

(من الكتاب: قَصُصُ التُّيِّن - لأبي الــسن علي الندوي - البزء الأول، مع
تصريف بسيط)

مَعالين الكَلِماتِ الجَديدةِ:

اجَتَمَع $=$ gathered together
حَرِّقوه = burn him
أَأَقْوَ $=$ threw
غابَ / يَغيبُ to be away
ماتَ / يموتُ = to die

## VI. Read and answer the following questions:

## العالَمُ









 أَفَكا تَتْْكُرُونْ أسئلة:
 أين تــكنون؟ مِنْ أين يترل الاء؟؟ بأي شيء تنبت الأشجار؟ هـ هل تشكرون الشّ؟ أتذكرون نعته؟

> دوس YV

## ترينات

(1)

## I. Translate the following:

## (البنت الكبيرة) طاهرة: يا فاطمة، يا شاطِرةُ، هل سِعِتِ الكلامَ مِنّي أو لا؟

 طاهرة: كيف ما فهـْتِ؟ وما طلبتُ منكٌ إلا كأساً من الماء. فاطمة: صغيراً أو كبيرا؟ طاهرة: كبيرا. فاطمة: وأين الكأسُ الكبيرُ؟ طاهرة: في الدُّولاب. فاطمة: الدولاب رفيعٌ جداً. طاهرة: إِسْجَي كُرْمِياً. فاطمة: وأيٌ كرسير. طاهرة: المَشْبَيِّ فاطمة: هو ثقيلٌ جدا.
طاهرة تَزعُعُلُ ...وبَعْدَ قليلٍ طاهرة: يا أنخي المبيبُ، يا خالد! مل سِعْتِ ما طا طَلْبْتُ من فاطمة؟ خالد: لا! ما سععتُ وما فهـتُ. طاهرة: كيفَ تَفْهَم وأنت ما سمعتُعْ بَّ بَلْ أنت أَصَمُ. خالد: أنا اَسْمَعُ كلُ شيءٍ إلا اللُّنْوَ.

طاهرة: بل أنتَ من الذين لا يسمعون، وإذا سمعوا، لا يفهمون، وإذا فهموا، لا يعملون. خالد: إذاً اُسْكُي.
 خالد: يَرْمي كرة من الورق إليها (يرمي/ ماضي: رمى to throw) . طامرة تَضْرِب الولدَ ضربةُ خَفِيْفَةُ.
خالد: يا أُمي اُنظري إلى طاهرةٍ ضَرْبَتْيْ بِوةٍة.
 وادرُسوا جيدا الِامتِحانِكم.
خالد: (لطاهرة) أنتِ عُصْفورة. طاهرة: وأنتَ فيل".
خالد: يا أُمي هل تسعين كلامْها؟ الأم: يا أيها الأولاد، هل تقرؤون وتكتبون أم لا الأولاد: حاضِرين يا أمي. وبعد قليل؛
طاهرة: يا أمي، أُنظُري إلى خالدٍ يلعب بالقِطُةٍ فالولد يَدْفع القِطَّة إلى طاهرة. ..وطاهرة تَصرْ خُ الأم: يا الله. واللهُ إني تَعِبْتُ منكم.
(ب)
ليس الفقراءُ الذين يَسْألون الناسَ على الشوارع أو يَطُرُقون (knock) على باب بعد باب: بل الفقراءُ الذين لا يسألون أحدًا ويَكْتْوُون (conceal) فَقْرَمْ ولا
(ت)

ينظرون إلى أموالٍ الناس ولا يَحْمُدوهم. والناسُ يحسَبوفم أغنياءَ. فَاعْرفوهم يا أصحابَ المال من وُجوهِهِم وأحوالِهِم (conditions) . واجلِسوا معهم، وكُوْا معهمَ
 وليست الدنيا هَمُهُم - كَلاْ بل هم تر كوا الحِرْصَ (greed) ويعملون بأيدِيهم من الصباح إلى المساء، ويعبدون الله بالليل.. ولكن لا يَنْفَعُهم جُهُتَهم لأنُّ السُوقَ (market) اليومَ لِقُوةَ لِقوةِ البِسْمْ والعَقْلِ.
(ت)
اُُنظُر إلى الناس في الشَّوار ع كيف يَسْرُعُون. إلى أين هُمْ يذهبون؟ يخرجـــون صباحاً من بيوتِهم ويدخلون ين المَكَاتب، والدَّكَاكينِ، والَصصانِّع والمَز ارِع. (حتى النساءُ





 يَذْكر هذه الحقيقةَ - ألا وهي - إننا لا نَرُرُك الدنيا بل الـــدنيا تَـــــترْ كُكُنا بعـــد أنْ
 دَخَلَ. فافهمي يا أختي:- تَخْلَعينَ نياب الفاخرةِ - يوماً - وتلْبَمين الــــَاذَجَةَ، لا خَيطَ فيها، وتَرْحَلين وحيدةً إلى الآخرةِ. فاصبرِي على مُصَائبِ الدنيا واطلُّي مِنْ رِبِّكِ
(گَ-YV)

واعْبُدِيه وحده، لا شريك له، واتْر كي الدنيا قبل أن تَـــْرْكُكِكِ.


 تَرْحَلَ من الدنيا وتدْخُلْ القبرَ واذكُرْ قولَ البي (صلى الله عليه وسلم): الدنيا مالِّ لِمَنْ لا مالَ له ولا يَجْمَعُها إلاْ من لا عقلَ له.
(ث)

Translate the following and answer the questions below:

القرانُ المَجيْدُ (ب)

 الْعَظِيْمُ / للهُ مُلكُ السَّمواتِ وَالأرْضِ / رَبٍِ اجْعَلْ هذَا بَلَداً آمِناً / وَارْزُقْ أَهْلَهُ مِنَ




(Yv-אرينات)

# هل أولياء الله يكزنون؟ هل عليهم خحوف في المنه؟ لمن السموات؟ لمن الأرض؟ 

 أتقنط من رحمة الله؟ من يغفر الذنوب؟ مَن الغفور؟
## (ج)

## الأمْتالُ وَانْحِكَم" Proverbs and Words of Wisdom




## (2)

دينُ الـلـلمين الإساذمُ، و ليس دِيْن المِصام. أحكامُه فِي القران الَّجيْدِّ، وُهو في اللسان العربي. وَالعربية خحيرُ لسانٍ، ولكن لايعرِف أهْل الاسلام هذا اللسَانَ، فلا هم اليه يرغبون، ولا لقراءته يرغبو ن! واعلموا ايُّها الاو لاد! اِنَّه لِّسَ بصعْبٌ. بَلِ الناسُ جَعَلوهُ صَعبًا لِمنْهاج تعْليمهم. فاتْر كوا الغفلةَ وَاطلبُوا اللّسان العربي بَدٍّ وشوقِ. وَافهَمُوا به القُرانَ والحديث، واخدموا الدّينَ مِن غَير خوفِّ، وانصرُوا الحقَّ وَاعْبُدوا إلها واحدّا، وهو الله العظيم. واسْجُدوا له، ولا تسجدوا للشهم ولا للقمر ولا للوطن ولا للبقر ولا للنارِ ولا لشِيء آخرِ، واعلموا انْ اللهُ له مُلك السّدوات والارضِ، وَانّ الله على كُلُ شَيءِ قَدِيْر .
The religion of the Muslims is Islam - not a religion of disputations. Its commandments are in the Noble Qur'an. It is in the Arabic language. And Arabic is the best of languages. But the people of Islam do not know this language. So they are not inclined to it, nor to its reading. Know it $O$ boys that it is not hard, but rather the people have made it hard through the manner of its teaching. Therefore, give up heedlessness, and seek the Arabic language with endeavor and devotion. (Do the rest)

( ${ }^{(1)}$
Read the following and answer the questions.
غرفةُ الدَّرْسِ

الأستَاذُ جلسَ في غرفة الدرس على الكرسي، و التلاميذ جلصوا على المقاعد (black) (blackboard) (seats) بالطبَّشورةٍ (chalk-piece) عند الضَّرورة (at the need) والتلاميذ ينظرون اليها. الأستاذ أمر العريف بقراءة الدّرس فنهض العريف وقرأ الدرس البلديد وهو واقفٌ
(standing)
الأستاذ: هل فَهِمتَ الدرس؟
العريف: نعم فهِــتُ يا سيِّدى!
الاستاذ سأل التلاميذ: أفهمتم الدرسَ ايضًا؟
التلاميذ: نعم: فهمنا جيدا.
الاستاذ: أ تحظونه؟
التلاميذ نعم: نغفظه إن شاء الله.
وفى اثناء الدرس ضَحِك تلميذٌ فغضِب الأستاذ عليه وسأله لماذا ضحكـع؟ ألاتعلم أَنَّ هذه غرفةَ الدرس؟ فاخرج منها الان. ثَ نَصح جميع التلاميذ قائلا (saying) : أيها التلاميذ! هذه غرفة الدرس فاجلِسوا فيهًا بأدب واسكتُوا ولاتضحكوا واحذروا المحادثَةَ فيها وإلاُ فاعلموا انّْى أغضْب عليكم. ألا تعلمون أنَ الادب زينةُ

المرء؟ (ornament)

أَسئلة:
هل ضحك أحد اثناء الدرس؟ أين السبّورة؟ ما لوفا؟ من يكتب عليها؟ أين جلس الأستاذ والتلاميذ؟ من قرأ الدرس؟ أفهِم التلاميذ الدرس؟ بلاذا غضب الأستاذ؟ لماذا

نصح؟ أضحك التلميذ فى الفصل؟ ما هي زينة المر؟؟ هل تسكت عند الدرس؟ أتضحك فى الصلاة؟
(ذ)

## Translate the following:

اقرأ بِاسم ربك / أذكر ربك فى نفــك / كُلٌ من عند ربِّنا / له كل شىء / ا

 وعند الله ثواب الدنيا والأخرة / لِمَن الملك اليوم؟ لِلهِ الواحد القهار / لله ملك
 الحمد لله الذي خلقنا فى بيت مسلم، ديننا الإسلام وهو خير دين best of (situation, هذا من احوالِنا (established) فی العالم. ولكن لا يثبت religions)
 الناس لا يعلدون أحكامَه (commandments) و ليس فى أعمالمم الإخلاص ينصحون الناس ولكن لايعْمَلُون بأنفــهم فلهذا ليس فى نُصحهـم
 الناس. ظاهرهم جميل وباطنهم قبيح. ليس فيهم حُبٌ (love) لِدينهم ولا لِنبيهم، جدُّهم (earnestness) وحبهم للمال. مَمْصَدُهم (objective) طعامٌ لذيذ ولباس جميل يعلمون أن الموت حق ولكنهم لا يذكرونه ولا يحذرون الذنوب، ومم عن الآخرة يغفلون.
إن الآخرة هي دار القرار (the abode of rest) . اعلموا يا إخوانى أَن الموت لايترك أحدا - لا مَلِكا (king) ولا غنيا ولا فقيرا. فلا مالٌ ينفع ولا جمال يمنع. فاذكروا ذاك اليوم واتر كوا الفخر بالمال.
(YV -ترينات)

Read in the name of your Lord. Remember your Lord within yourself. Everything is from our Lord. To Him belongs everything. Surely, Allah is my and your Lord, so worship Him. There is nothing like unto Him; and He is the Hearing, the Seeing. The truth is from your Lord. For me is my deed while for you your deed. And Allah knows best. Surely, with Allah is great reward. So, with Allah is the recompense of this and the next world. Whose is the kingdom today? For Allah, the One, the Subduer. For Allah is the sovereignty of the heavens and the earth. Is there a deity besides Allah? May Allah forgive you. Is this not the truth? (Complete the rest).
(J)

## Read and answer the questions:

الأنبج فاكهة لذيذة وشجرته كبيرة، تنبت فى الهند وقشره ثخينّ، فى داخله نواة كبيرة، الأنبج الفجّ لونه أخضر وهو حامض وحموضته لذيذه واليانع منه لونه أصفر وهو حلو، أهل الدكن يصنعون من الأنبج الفَجَ والصل واللحم والــمن إداما لذيذا يأَكلونه برغبة. أنبج الدكن مشهور فى المند وله أقسام كثيرة. بعضه نقطعه بالـگّين تُ نأكله وهذا خير قسم من الأنبج مافيه من زغب. وبعضه نرشفه برغبة شديدة، وتارة نعصره في إناء گُ غنزجه بقليل من السُكِ وِ اللبن والقشطة وهذا الصصير لذيذ جلًا.

الأنبج يمصُل فى فصل الصيف فكل غني وفقير يأكله كثيرا لانَّه رخيصّ. الأنبج يبعل الانسانَ قوّيا فهذه نعمة الله عليكم أَيها الناس! فكلوا من رزق ربكم واشكروا له فإنه يرزقكم من الطيبات أفلا تشكرون؟ اعلموا أن الشكر مببٌ لزيادة النعمة.

Mango is a tasty fruit. Its tree is large and grows in India. Its skin is thick. Inside it is a large seed. The color of an unripe mango is green and it is sour. However, its sourness is quite tasty. The color of its ripe ones is yellow and it is sweet.

The people of Deccan make from unripe mangoes a tasty dish with onion, meat and refined butter and which they eat with relish. Mangoes of the Deccan area is well-known in India. They are many kinds of it. Some of them we cut with the knife and then eat: and this is the best of the kinds of mangoes. It has no tissues. Some of them we suck with great relish. Sometimes we squeeze it in a bowl and then mix with a little bit of sugar, milk, and cream. This juice is very tasty. Mango is available in the summer season. Every rich and the poor eat much of it, for it is cheap. Mango makes a man strong. This is Allah's bounty upon you O people. So eat from Allah's provision and thank Him for He provided you of the good things. Will you not thank? Know it that giving thanks is the means of increase in bounty.


# اِسمُ الفاعلِ <br> (Active Participle) 

## Grammatical Clues:

In Lesson 25 you have learnt about subject and object. Now we shall learn about another Arabic construction which makes it easy to make the active participle. In most other languages, there is no equivalent of this, making it difficult to learn those languages.
To explain, we know the words "piety," "cut," or "live forever" in English. But, is there a single rule following which you can make active participles from these words. From "piety" you make "pious", from "cut" you make "cutter", and from "live forever" you make the active participle "one who lives forever." Is there any rule? Obviously not.
But in Arabic there is. From صَلَحَ (he became pious) you make the إسمُ الفاعِلِ
 ([the] cutter), and from خَلَّلَ (he lived forever) you make حالِّ ([the] one who lives forever).
We are sure the rule is already apparent to you. What you do is to add an "alif" ${ }^{(1)}$ after the first letter of the triliteral verb, and you get the active participle.
Every active participle in Arabic is made on the same pattern, and with the same "harakaat" no matter what the "harakaat" in the verb of the past tense. That is, the second consonant will always have a "kasrah" while the last always two "dammas" so long as the word is in its original form, without an agent acting upon it.
Making feminine is simple. You add a round "taa" ( $\overline{0}$ ) at the end of the active participle. So that صَاكِّ صالِحَةٌ in feminine.
Now you can go on making as many as you want, without ever wondering how to do it. In English, a dictionary does not tell you that you make "pious" out of "piety." When you look into "piety", there is no clue about what a man of piety is called.
So, you see, Arabic is a well structured language in which, once you know a few basic principles, you can learn the language with some application without external help.
We must note that the active participle (اسْمُ الفاعِل) is a noun. Therefore, it will undergo all those changes that nouns undergo because of one or another agent.
(r^ -إمـمُ الفاعلِ)

As for plurals, well, you have already learnt the rules in Lesson 8.
الكلمات:

| اسم الفاعل (المذكر) |  |  | الفِعل' |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| البحع |  |  |  |  |  |
| صَادقُونِ | True | صَادِقٌ | Spoke the truth | صَدَقَ | 1 |
| صَالِحُونِّ | Pious | صَالِح" | Became pious | صَلَحِ | r |
| جاعلونِ | Maker | جاعل* | He made | جَعِّ | r |
| لاحقون' | The one who joined | لاحقّ | He joined or met | لَحِقَ | $\varepsilon$ |
| ناصحونّ | Advisor | ناصحٌ | He advised | نُصَحْ | $\bigcirc$ |


| اسم الفاعل (المؤث) |  | الفِعلُ |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| الجمع | المفرد |  |  |  |
| غافلاتٌ | غافلةٌ | To be unaware | غَفِلِ | 1 |
| ذاكراتٌ | ذاكِرّةٌ | Remembered | ذَكَرِ | r |
| كاذبات | كاذبةٌ | Lied | كَذِبَ | $r$ |

الكلمات البلديدة:

| Person | شَخْص | Charity | ز'كاة |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Reason, intelligence | عَقْلِ | To see | بُصرِ |
| Private parts (of the body) | فَْجْجّ (ج: فُرو ج) | Cow | بَقِّهِ |
| Heart | قَلْبِ | Stomach | بَطْن |
| To throw | قَذِ | Repentance | الكتوبة |



الأمثلة:
The boy told the truth, so the boy is truthful.

The transgressor regretted, so the transgressor is regretful.

Everything will be destroyed except Allah.

صـَدَقَ الغلامُ فَالغُلامُ صَادِق" rn نَدِمَ الظَّالِمُ فَالظَّالِمُ نَادِمٌ

The player threw the ball, so the player is the thrower.

Those who believed and did good deeds, they are the people (of) Paradise, living therein for ever.

When your Lord told the angels, "surely I will place in the earth a vicegerent".

إن الذينَ آمنوا وَعَمِلوا الصالحاتِ
。 أولئك أصحاب الِينَّةِ هُم فِيهَا
خَالِدُونَ (الآية)
إذ قَالَ رَبُكَ لِلملائِكَـــةِ إِنِّي جَاعِلّ
7
(
$O$ the inhabitants of the graves we are to join you.
v يَا أَمْلَ القُقُورِ إِنَّا بِكُم لاَحِقُون

And those who are doers of charity.

$$
\text { } 9 \text { والذين هم للز كاة فَاعِلونَ }
$$

Piety is in giving up the forbidden and carrying out the obligations
الوَقَوى فيَ تركِ الْمُحرَّمَات وأداءِ

## EXERCISES

I. Of the following words make (اسم الفاعـــل) both masculine (المــذـرك) and feminine (المؤن):


## II. Translate the following and underline the (اسم الفاعل):

ا. النِّافَةُ وَاجِبَةٍ عَلَى كُلِ مُسِلمِ وَمُسلِمَةٍ
 صَإِحَاتٌ
r. وَعَدَ اللّهُ الَذِينَ آمنُوا وعدِلُوا الصَّالَاَاتِ ينهم أجْرُا عَظِيماً (الآية)

 هُمْ فِيها خَالِدونَ
 V. إن اللّهُ عَالِمُ الغَيب وَالشَّهادَةِ ^. هـ هذا هو الشَّخْص الذي كَتَبَ كِتاباً نَافِعاً
9. قَال إبراهيمُ إين ذَاهِبٌ إلى رُبِي

 بعيدأ عَن البَقراتِ
III. Use the following words as اسم الفاعل in simple sentences both singular and plural, masculine and feminine in all 32 sentences:
V. Translate the following:

$$
\frac{\text { م- ر- ربي اللهر الأصنام؟-ع }}{\text { كس }}
$$

 وَأَنُ اللهُ بَاق لاَ يَغِيبُ. وَأَنْ اللهَ قَوِيٌّ لَا يَغْلِبُهُ شَىْءُ وَعَرَفَ إِبْرَاهِيمُ أَنْ الهُ رَبُ الْكَوْكَبِ وَأَنْ اللهُ رَبُ الْقَرَرْ !
وَأَنْ اللهُ رَبُ الشُّمْسْ بِ

8. My Lord is Allah

Ibrahim had recognized that Allah is his Lord. For, Allah is Ever Living, never dies.
And that Allah is the Ever Lasting who will never disappear.
And that He is the Strong Whom nothing can overcome
And Ibrahim realized that Allah is the Lord of the planet
And that Allah is the Lord of the moon
And that Allah is the Lord of the sun
And that Allah is the Lord of the worlds
Allah guided Ibrahim and made of him a Prophet and a "Khaleel" (Friend)
And Allah ordered Ibrahim that he should invite his people, and prevent them worship of the idols.
(Complete the rest).

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {-9- دعوة إبراهيم } \\
& \text { وَدَعَا إِبْرَاهِيمُ قَوْمَهُ إِلَى اللهُ وَمْنَعَهُمْ مِنْ عِبَادَةِ الأَصْنَامِ. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { قَالُوا نَعْبُدُ أُصنَامًا. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أَوْ يَنْفَعُونَكُمْ أَوْ يَضُرُوُ نُ } \\
& \text { قَالُوا بَلْ وْجَدْنَا آبَاءَنَا كَذْلِكَ يَغْكَوْنَ } \\
& \text { تَال } \\
& \text { Kr } \\
& \text { 园 }
\end{aligned}
$$



## مَعاني الكَلِماتِ البَديدةِ

دَعَا = he invited
وَجَذْ وَ
عَدُو $=$ an enemy
يُهْدينِ $=$ يهديني meaning, "He guided me." The was dropped: a common practice in Arabic to save space. The root is ó óv meaning, "He guided."
= see the above note about , from سَسْقِيْنِ = meaning, he gave a drink.
 يُحْيِنِ $=$ أحيا meaning, he gives me life. This verb is a derived form, which we shall discuss later in this course.
تُطْعْمُ أَطْعَمْ meaning, it feeds (note: without a "me"). See the note above.
= from تُمِّتُ

## إسمُ المفعول <br> (Passive Participle)

## Grammatical Rules:

We have before us, once again, a clever way of shortening the lengths of sentences so that, in lesser time you can say more. This is a special feature of the Arabic language. For example, we say, "He is a creation." But in Arabic we just say, "~ْلْون" (the created one).

What we do is to add a $p$ at the beginning of a tri-literal verb and a $g$ after the
 the usual addition of a gand a $u$.

The feminine has the usual rule. Add a round "taa" ( $\quad$ ) to get a feminine. So .
The harakaat, as they appear in these examples, are standard harakaat. Whenever you make a passive participle from a tri-literal verb, the harakaat will remain unchanged.
And, since a passive participle is a noun, it will undergo all those changes in harakaat which any noun undergoes.

| اسم الَفْعُول (مذكر) |  |  | الفِعل' |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| الجمع | المفرد |  |  |  |
| مَحُلُقونَ | The one created | مَخلُوقٌ | حَحْقِ | 1 |
| منصورونَ | The one helped | منصــرر" | نُحَرْ | $r$ |
| مقبولونَ | The one accepted | مقبولٌ | قِبِّ | r |

(rq-امِمُ المَفعبرلِ

| اسم الْفْعْول (المؤنّ) |  | الفِعلُ |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| \% | مفرد |  |  |  |
| مَفْتوحَاتٌ | مَفْتُوحَّ | To open | فنَحَ | 1 |
| منوعاتٌ | منوعة | To stop | مَسْنَعْ | Y |
| منقولاتٌ | منقولة | To relay/move | نَقَلِ | $\stackrel{r}{ }$ |

الكلمات الجلديدة:

| Your two eyes | عَيْنِّكْكِ | Respect | الأدب |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| To open, (conqueror) | فَتَحْ ، فاتح | A beast for sacrifice | البَدَنَّهُ |
| Proudly | فاخر | Garden | البستان |
| Lazy | كسـلان | To spit | بَصصق، الِّصْقُ |
| Talk / words | كَلام | Force / platoon | جند |
| At all events | على كل حال | Rope | المبل |
| Proud | مغرور | To warn | حَذرَ ، احذر |
| Reasonable | معقول | Horse | الحيل |
| Habit | عَادةٌ | Smoke (smoking) | الدخان |
| Unreasonable | غير معقول | Tasty | لذيذة |
| Happy | مسرور | To bound | مربوط (رَّط) |
| Accepted | مقبول | Master | اللمِّدِّ |
| Absconding | مهروب (هرب) | Whole | السّالمة |
| Disapproved | مذموم | One who precedes | السابق (سبق) |
| Murdered | مقتول | To make or manufacturer | صَّعَ ، صانع |

(ra-إسمُ المَعرلِل)


الأمثلة :


## EXERCISES

I In the sentences given below, first underline the مَفُعُلِّ بِهِ , then translate them into English.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ه. وَلكِنْ كَلامَكَ يَا نَاصِحِ غَيرَ مْعُقُول } \\
& \text { 7. و يَا خادمُ أَنا بك وبكَلامِكَ غيرُ مسرُورٍ }
\end{aligned}
$$

( 9 - إِسُمُ المَفعول)
V. وَالشُّغْلُ عِندَكَ يَا فَانخِر غيرُ مَقبوُ لو ^. ضـعُفَ الطُّالبُ وَآلَطْلوبُ (الآية)
 - ـ عَرَفوا المقُتولَ وَلكنَّ القاتِلَ مَهْروبٌ


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { با . يَا صانعَ الشَرِّ احْــنَرْ - إنْ جُندَنَا هُم المَنصُورُونَ } \\
& \text { ع ا ـ شُرْبُ الدُخَّان مِنَ المكُرُوهَاتِ }
\end{aligned}
$$

II. Use the following words in sentences.


## III. Translate the following:

1. A written command.
2. A bad habit.
3. An unreasonable man admonished a reasonable person
4. The drinks are aplenty.
5. In my house, the servant is the one served.
6. The unhappy woman is eating sweets (حلوى).
7. Bad (condemned) habits are unwanted
8. Everything is known for the knower.
9. The forgiven man is greatly happy.
(rq-إسمُ المَفعولِ)
10. When the creator helps then the created are the victorious.
11. They were fed from the lawful.
12. The messengers were killed without right.
13. People will be asked about their deeds on the day of Judgment.
14. The boy was hit on the nose.
15. Muslims are being killed everywhere because they are Muslims.

## IV. Translate the following:


10. In the Presence of the King

There was in the town a big king, and very oppressive.
The people used to prostrate themselves for the king.


The king heard (came to know) that Ibrahim prostrates himself to Allah and to none else.
So the king was angry and called for Ibrahim.
Ibrahim came. And Ibrahim was never afraid of anyone except Allah.
The king asked, "Who is your Lord O Ibrahim?"
Ibrahim replied, "My Lord is Allah."
The king asked, "Who is Allah O Ibrahim?"
Ibrahim said, "He who gives life and death."
The king said, "I give life and death."
And the king asked for a man and killed him.
And he asked for another man but left him alone (unharmed).
(Complete the rest)


1 1 - دعوة الوالد

يَا أَبَتِ لاَ تَعْبُدِ الشَّهُطَانَا
ياَ أَبَتِ اعْبُدِ الرَّحْمَنِ!
 وَكَانَ إِبْرَاهِيمُ حَلِيمًا، فَقَالَ لِوَالِدِهِ، سَاْمُ عَلْْْكَ، وَقَالَ لَهُ، أَنَا أَذْهَبُ مِنْ هُنَا وَأَدْعُو

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (rq-إسُمُ المفعول) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { الله. } \\
& \text { (من الكتاب: قَصَصُ الِْبِيٌن - لأبي المسن علي الندوي - الجزء الأول، مع تصريف } \\
& \text { بسيط) }
\end{aligned}
$$

درس • 「

## تُصاريفُ إسمَ الفاعلِ واسِمْ المعولِ 

## (Conjugations of Ism al-Faa'il and Ism al-Maf ul)

## Rules:

There are hardly any special rules involved when nouns of this pattern are affected by an (عامِل ) or by a grammatical rule, except perhaps to point out that when you need to give a kassa or fat-haa to the plurals of one of these nouns, you do the following:
If it is a masculine plural, then you replace the last consonant, with a. So, صادِقون becomes صادقينَ , if, e.g., you added a مِن at the beginning of ; مفعول به or is a مضاف إليه , or if it becomes becomes صادقون . In other words, whether the required harakah is fat-haa or kassa, the changes are same.
In case of feminine, the harakah of the last consonant is changed to kassa in both cases; i.e., whether you require to give a fat-haa to it or a kasrah - in both الصادقات to to with the addition of مِن as well as when it is, e.g., a مفعول به . So that you say, عرفت meaning, I have known the truthful women) and not) عرفتُ الصادِقاتِ which should normally have a fat-haa, but not when it is feminine plural ending with a long جمع مؤنث السالم ) ت ( )]; take for example: إنْ الْحَسَّاتِ يُذْهِبْنَ السمَيُّاتِ of a gatha] because of السِيَّات and has a kassa [instead of a gatha] because it is مفعول به .
(•-r-تصاريفُ إسمِّ الفاعلِ وإسِ المفعولِ)

الأمثلة:
جمع اسم الفاعل


جمع اسم المفعول

(•r-تَصاريفُ إسمِ الفاعلِ واسمِ المفعولِ)

الكلمات الجديدة:


Indeed Allah is my and your Lord and He is the most Merciful of those who show mercy.

I read stories of the followers and they were the best of men in their time.

What is the number of those killed in accidents?
(They said) "He who did this to our lords, is surely of the transgressors.

He said, "Rather your Lord is the Lord of the heavens and the earth, who created them and $I$ am upon that a witness for you."

O doer of good, give up evils also.
ه قَالَ بَل رَبُكُم رَبُ السّمْوات
والأرْض الذي فَطَرَهُنَّ وَأَنا على
ذَلِكم مِن الشًّاهِلِين (الآية)
ح بَا فَاعِلَ الـَيْراتِ آترك السيئات

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { r قَرأتُ قَصَصَ التَّابِعينَ وَ هم خَيرُ } \\
& \text { رِجالِ فِي زمانْهِم } \\
& \text { r rمْ عَدَدُ الْقَتُولِينَ في الحَوادِث؟ } \\
& \text { ع (قالوا) مَن فَعَلَ هنَا بآلِهِ ـِيَنَا إِنَّهُ } \\
& \text { لَمِنَ الظُّالِمينَ (الآية) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ا } \\
& \text { الرُّاحِمينَ }
\end{aligned}
$$

(•-r-تَصاريفُ إِمِّ الفاعلِ واسِمِ المْععولِ)

## EXERCISES

## 1. Translate the following into English:

1- يَا قَوْمِ اعمَكوا على مكانتكمه، إين عَامِلٌ (الآية)
r- r- الصَّادِقُ يُصحــبُ (accompanies) الصَّادِقِنِ وَالفَاسِقُونَ يَصحَبُونَ الفاسقين
rr- r-ع- إِنَ المُمْرْمِين هُمُ الخرُوْمُون
 - 7 - يَا بنت ارْكِعِي مَعَ الرَّاكِعاتِ

V- $V$
 -9- البَّات الصَّالِحَات يُصحَبَنَ العالِمات

## II. Translate into Arabic:

1. The truthful spoke the truth, so they are of the loved ones.
2. Look at those who were overcome, they are not regretful (ندم).
3. Allah is angry with those who sit back from services (خدمات).
4. O girl! Are you of those who testify (شهد) that Allah is One?
5. O women! Do not take the company of the ignorant women .
6. The destroyed ones will have no helper.
7. You are in front of intelligent men and women.
8. This is the mother's day of anger.
9. Of the ten transgressed mentioned, three were truly transgressors.

## III. Translate the following:







## 1. To Makkah

Ibrahim's people were angry, the king was angry and Ibrahim's father was angry.
Ibrahim wished to travel to another country, worship Allah there, and invite people to Allah's worship.
Ibrahim came out of his country and said farewell to his father.
(He went towards Syria, and, after a while)
Ibrahim decided to go to Makkah, and he had his wife Hajar with him.
In Makkah there was neither grass nor a tree.
And Makkah had neither a well nor a river.
And in Makkah there was neither a human being nor an animal.
Ibrahim reached Makkah and alighted into it.
And Ibrahim left his wife Hajar and his son Ismail.
(Complete the rest)

#   <br> مَلْ أَمَرَكَ الهُ بَهُ بَاْْ 

قَال إِبرَمرَهِيمُ: نَعَمْ!


 إِلَى بَاَلَدِمِمْم
هَلْ شَرِبْتَ مَاءَ زَمْزَمْمُ
(من الكتاب: قَصصُصُ النَّيُّن - لأبي المسن علي الندوي - البزء الأول، مع تصريف بسيط)

مَعانيِ الكَلِماتِ الجَديدةِ


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { rir }
\end{aligned}
$$

(•r-تَصاريفُ إسمِ الفاعلِ واسِم المفعولِ)

## IV. Translate the following:






 الأولاد، أن الإنسان يكصد كما يزرع.
V. Remove the brackets and rewrite stating the meaning :

من (الشاكرون )، فى (الساجدون )، بِ (غائبرن)، مع (الصابرون)، أوّل (العابدون)،


 (الظالمون)، تنصر (المـلمون).

## إسم السفضـِلِ

## (Comparative and Superlative Degrees)

## Grammatical Clues:

Except that we have feminine nouns different from the masculine, the method of making a comparative or superlative degree is as simple in Arabic as it is in English; except that in English, it is slightly more difficult than in Arabic. In English you have to know an adjective to be able to make the comparative and superlative degrees. From 'big' you must make bigger and biggest.
But in Arabic you always, start with the root: the verb. Once you know a verb, you can make any number of nouns from it. (An adjective is primarily a noun in Arabic).
Another comfort is that you derive both the comparative as well as the superlative, with one word. The same word can mean both, going by the context.
So, from 'كَبُ (to become big, to be big), you make 'أكبر' as comparative as well as the superlative adjectives meaning "bigger" as well as "biggest." Now, which one, comparative or superlative? Well, the context will tell you. In a sentence "مذا أكبرُ بيتِ في الكَي" it is easy to say that the translation should be in the superlative: "This is the 'largest' house in the neighborhood." But in oذا it is obviously in comparative degree, meaning, "This house is 'larger" than that one." The presence of a مِن is the easy indicator of comparative degree.
Luckily, in most cases the comparative and superlative degree adjectives are common for masculine and feminine, as the table below shows. E.g., هذهِ أكبر' "This is the oldest (female) student in the classroom." As an adjective, أكبر becomes كُبرَى when used as a feminine.

الكلمات:

| اسم الـفضـلـ |  | (Noun) |  |  | الفعل (Verb) |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Meaning | مذكر ومؤنث | Meaning | المؤنث | المذكر | Meaning |  |  |
| Greater, greatest | كُبْرَى أَبْرُ | Great | كبيرة | كبيرّ | Became great | كُبرَ | 1 |
| More, most learned or knowing | أعلم | Learned or knowing | عليمة | عليم | Became learned, or he knew | عَلِمَ | r |
| More or most beautiful | أجمل | Beautiful | جَمِيلةٌ | جَمِيلٌ | Became beautiful | جَمَل | $r$ |
| More or most profitable or beneficial | أنفع | Profitable or beneficial | نافعة | نَافِفِ | Became profitable or beneficial | نَفَ | $\varepsilon$ |

*This feminine form is commonly not employed


الكلمات الجلديلة:

| Difficult | صَعْبٌ | Front | أمامً |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Pathway, road, street | طريقٌ | Family | أَهْلْ |
| Ugly | قبيح | Better | أَحْسْنُ |

(1-

| To disbelieve | كَفِبِ | Hereafter | آنحرةٌ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Loved one | مجوب | Without | بدونٍ |
| To associate | مشركون (أشْركّ) | Body | جسْمٌ |
| To stand | ورقف | Life | حياةٌ |
| To be circumscribe | وَسِعِّ | To surpass, to excel | فَضْلِ |
| To become poor | فَرُ | Cheap | رخيص |

الأمثلة:

| Allah is the greatest, or Allah is Greater. | الله أكبر' | 1 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| She is older of age but smaller of body. | هي أكبرُ في السٍّنِ ولكنَّها أصْغَر في الجِسم | $r$ |
| Who is the most truthful (in words) than Allah? | مَــنْ اَحْـــدَقُ بـــنَ اللهُ <br> (في القَول)؟ | $r$ |
| A'isha is more beautiful than Zaynab. |  | を |
| The camel is one of the most beneficent of animals. |  | - |
| The book is beneficial but the teacher is more beneficial. | آلْكِتَــابُ نَافِــعٌ وَكَكِنَّ الأستاذَ أَنْـــفَ | 7 |
| Is Allah not the best of judges? |  <br> الـاكمين (الآية) | V |
| And above every knowledgeable is one (who is) more knowledgeable. | وَفَوقَ كُلِّ ذي عِــــ! عـــليمْ | $\wedge$ |




## EXERCISES

## I. Translate the following into English:











```
(1)
```


## II. Translate into Arabic:

1. Which is cheaper? grapes or figs.
2. This is bigger than that.
3. That is more difficult than this.
4. The camel is taller than the horse.
5. Arabic is older (قدي)) than English.
6. Who is worse? One who knows but does not act, or one who acts but does not know.
7. What can be better for a boy than that when he grows people know him as the most learned of the people - praise him and respect him, he serves them and does not ask (طالب) for wages.
8. Which of you drank from this clean cup? Did you wash it and made it cleaner than before?
9. Surely, the most loved by Allah, is the most truthful of his words.
10. This life is good, but hereafter is better for the believers.
III. Use the following (أسماء التفضـل) in simple sentences:


## IV - Translate the following:



> (1) (-إسم التفضيلِ


وَنَحَحَ إِبْرَاهِيمُ في الإِمْتِحَانِ.


## 14. Ibrahim's Dream

Ibrahim returned to Makkah after some time.
He met Isma`il and he met Hajar. And Ibrahim was happy with his son Isma`il.
Ismail was a young boy, running, playing, and going out with his father.
Ibrahim loves his son very much.
One night, Ibrahim saw in his dream that he was slaughtering Ismail. Ibrahim was a true Prophet. His dream was a true dream.


Ibrahim was Allah's Khaleel (Friend). So he intended to do what he was ordered in the dream.
Ibrahim said to Isma`il.
I see in the dream that I slaughter you. So look (into it), what do you see (i.e., what is your opinion)?
He replied, "O my father. Do what you are being commanded. You will find me - Allah willing - of the patient and persevering.

Ibrahim took Isma'il with him and he took a knife.
When Ibrahim reached Mina, he decided to slaughter Isma'il.
He laid Isma`il down on the earth. He intended to slaughter him. He placed the knife on Isma'l's throat. But Allah had wished to see, will His Friend do as he is told? And, does he love Allah more, or does he love his son more? Ibrahim succeeded in the test. So Allah sent Jibril with a ram from Paradise and said, "Slaughter this and do not slaughter Isma`il.
And Allah approved of Ibrahim's deed and ordered Muslims to slaughter in the $A d-h a$ festival.
Allah sent (may Allah send) on Ibrahim the Khaleel peace and blessing. Allah sent (may Allah send) on his son Isma'il peace and blessing. (Complete the rest)


## (الr-ابسم التفضـلِ)

 بَارَكَ اللهُ في الْكَعْبِة وتَقَبَّل مِنْ إِبْرَاهِيمَ وَإِسْمَاعِيلَ. صَلَّى اللُّهُ عَلَى إِبْرَاهِيمَّ وْسَلْمَ. صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَى إسْمَاعِيلَ وَسَلْمَ.
 17 - 17

 وَسَكَنَ إِبْرَاهِيمُ في الشَّامِ وَسْكَنَ إِسْحَاقُ'



 وَإِلَيْكَ هَكْهِ الْقِصَّةَّ!
(من الكتاب: قَصَصُ الْبِيِّن - لأبي المسن علي الندوي - البِّء الأول، مع تصريف

مَعانين الكَلِماتِ البَلَيدةِ:

(1)


## V. Read the following and answer the questions in Arabic:

## الـلديقة العمومية في ملينتي

الحديقة العموميةُ فن مدينتي هى من أكبر الحدائق واَجَلِها- يدخلها النّاسُ كلَ يوٍ من الستّاعة المنامة (صباحأ)، ويلبَثون هناكى إلى الساعة الثامنة أو التاسعة (مساءًا)، وهم مسرورون بيمال الطبيعة وفِرحون بِطِيبِ المَقام، فيها أشجارٌ ِختلفةٌ ذاتُ الأثمارِ والازهار، ومنتزهاتٌ فيها حِياضٌ ذاتَ فُوّاراتٍ جميلةً، وأعشابٌ خضراءُ قد قَطَعَها الجُستاني بِبر اعَةٍ على أشكال بديعة، يزينها بعضُ التماثِلِ البِميلةِ، وفيها أبنيةّ جميلة، منها بناء خاص بحفلات عظيمة، فيها قاعة للخطابة وهي من أوسَع القاعاتِ وأكبرها، يخطبُ فيها الـُطْبَاءُ الكبار ويقال لذلك البناء "دار البلدية" ومنها بناء للمَعرض حيث تُعرضض المصنوعات الوطنيةُ البديعة كلٌ سنةٍ وفى الحديقة مسجدٌ من أجمل المساجد، وفيها حديقة الحيوانات حيثث يوجُد كثيرٌ من الحيوانات النادرة الشهيرة من الأُّد والطيور وغيرها.

The public garden in any town is the largest of gardens and the most beautiful of them. The people enter into it every day from five o'clock (in the morning) and remain there till eight or nine (in the evening). They are happy with the nature and feel happy from the goodness of the place. In it are different trees bearing fruits and flowers, and parks in which there are ponds with beautiful fountains,

and green grass that the gardener has skillfully designed on creative patterns. It is (the garden) is beautified by some beautiful statues. In it there are beautiful buildings. One of them is specifically for big events. In it is a hall for addressing, which is the most spacious and largest of it. Important orators speak in it. That building is called "the Corporation Hall." And of (the buildings) there is a building for exhibition whereat national innovative products are exhibited every year. In the garden there is a mosque which is one of the most beautiful of mosques. Then there is a zoo in it where rare and famous animals are found such as tigers, birds and others.

 أزهار بيضاءُ وحمراء وصفراء؟ أتظن أن هذه المديقة من أجمل الحدأئق؟ أتوجد التمائيل هناك؟ كم بستانيا لما؟ هل هم براعة فى اعمال المديقة؟ هل زرتم المعرض؟ كيف تكون الصنوعات الوطنية؟ هل من هذا المعـــرض فائــــه؟



## Clues:

We learn a few simple rules. We know that there are articles that change the "harakaat" of a noun. But how do they affect the dual nouns? Well, it is pretty simple. Firstly, we might remember that a noun is "marfoo"" in its original, even though the last letter has a "kasra", such as, e.g., رَجُلان, where the $\dot{\text { رُ }}$ has a "kasrah." But the word is considered "marfoo"" because it is in its original state. Now what happens when we add, say a لامُ تَمْليك to this word? Or, an to it. The former should give it a "kasra" while the latter a "fat-haa."
However, in case of all dual nouns any change in the "harakaat" - for whatever reason - does not alter the "harakah" of the last letter. But rather, the second last letter of the dual which is always 1 is changed to a s.So that, with the
 same will happen when the dual is a صفة .

Obviously, since صفة follows the موصوف in "harakaat," it will also undergo similar changes. E.g., سمعتُ قِصَّةَ الرَّجُلَين الْكَاذِبَن
The above rules apply to the feminine dual nouns also.
Another point that may be noted is that the $\dot{j}$ of a dual noun, or of a noun in plural that appears on the pattern of فاعلونَ is dropped off when it appears as a مضاف . So that, أستاذان becomes in the مضتاذَي/مضاف أليه construction, e.g., أستاذَي المدرسةٍ . مقتولونْ becomes In the plural مقتولو $\quad$. , meaning, "the dead of the Jihad."
(rr-المثن)

الكلمات:

| المؤ نث |  |  | المذك |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | التنية | المفرد |  | التنية | المفرد |
| Two worshipers | عابدتانِ | عَابِّكّهِّ | Two men | رُجُلانِ | رُجُلمٌ |
| Two women | إمر أتانِ | إمْرْأرْ | Two books | كتَابانِ | كِتابٌ |
| Two goats | نَعْجَتِّنِ | نَعْجَة | Two friends | صَدِيقانِ | صَكِيقٌ |
| Two present ones | مو جودتانِ | مؤجودةٌ | Two true ones | صادِقانِ | صَادِقٌ |
|  | مقتولتانِ | مقتولة | Two killed ones | مقتولانِ | مُقَتْلٌ |

الكلمات الجديدة:

| Wear | 'كبس' | Black | أسودُ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Leg | رجّلِّ | Holland | 8 |
| Knock | وَ | Nation, country | د |
| Eye |  | Marry | نَكْحَ |
| Window | 豙 | Laugh | ضِحْكِ |
| A minute | دقيقة | Begin |  |
| Alone | وحيدة | When | ' |
| To fall |  | News | أخبار (مفرد:خبر) |
| To strike, give an example | ضّرْبِ | Pajama/lower garment | إزار |
| Sparrow | الُُصْفر | Bedouin | بَدْوِي |
| Persian | الفار | To be heavy | ثُقرُ |
| To intend, to set a purpose | قَصِّ | Wall | جدار |

(r r-الثشن)



Two words ، light on the tongue, heavy in the balancer liked by the Beneficent: Glory to Allah and praise Allah be glorified, the Great.

Nuns' and Lut's wives, both were under two pious slaves.

We slaughtered two chickens yesterday for two Bedouins guest, but both refused to eat the slaughtered ones and demanded

(r r-المثنن)
two breads and two cups of tea.


Give them example of two men, for one of them We made two gardens of grapes.

These two are well-known men who wrote two books in two languages: Arabic and Persian. At the moment they are reading out two pages from their book before two men.'

## Note:

Some of the plural cases are on the form of tathniyyah تُندران such as تُ
 سَكُرانُ. They are not to be confused with the dual noun.

## EXERCISES

## I. Translate the following:

.
人 . . نَجَحَتَا في امْتِحَانهما



 فَالْحَقِقَةُ أنا غَيرُ مَنكُوحَةٍ. فَضَحِكَتْ هي - والبنتَانِ الصَغِيرتانِ في









## II. Use the following words in simple sentences in the dual but either

 "mansoob", or "majroor," with the verb also in dual.مثال: (رجل) الرجلان دخلا المسجد، أو دخل الرجلان اللذان غابا من أمس
(rr-المثن)

## III. Translate the following:

1. Two cats are sitting on a wall.
2. I finished reading two books.
3. Allah has promised the believers two gardens.
4. Two men are on two horses and two women are on a camel.
5. The two: Bukhari \& Muslim have collected sahih ahadith in two books.

## IV. Translate the following:













## The Best of Stories-1

## 1-A Strange Dream

Yusuf was a young boy and he had eleven brothers. Yusuf was a very pretty boy. Yusuf was an intelligent boy. His father Ya`qub used to love him more than all his brothers. One night Yusuf saw a strange dream. He saw that eleven planets, and he saw the sun and the moon, all of them prostrating themselves to him. The young Yusuf wondered a lot. He did not understand the dream. How could the planets, the sun, and the moon prostrate themselves to a man? The young Yusuf went to his father Ya`qub and narrated to him this strange dream.
He said, "O my father. Verily, I have seen eleven planets, the sun and the moon - I saw them - prostrating themselves to me."

His father Ya`qub was a Prophet. Ya`qub was very pleased with this dream.
And said, "May Allah bless you O Yusuf. Something important is going to be there for you.
This dream is a good tiding of knowledge and prophethood.
And Allah had blessed your grandfather Is-haq and Allah had blessed your (great) grand-father Ibrahim.
Surely, He will bless you and bless the family of Ya`qub." Ya`qub was quite an old man, and he knew the nature of the people.
He knew how Shaytan overcomes and how Shaytan plays with the people.
So he said, "O my son. Do not inform anyone of your brothers of this dream, for, they will envy you and become your enemy."
(Complete the rest)
(

حَ










r


يُحِبُونَهُهُ
وَكَانَ يَعْعُوبُ لاَ يُرْسِلُ يُوسُفَ مَعَ الإِنْوَهِ. وَكَانَ يُوسُفُ يُلْعَبُ مَعَ أَخِيهِ وَلَا يَذْهَبُ بِعِيلًا


قَالُو: يَا اََبَانَا لِمَاذَا لاَ تُرْمِلُ مَعْنَا يُوسُفِّْ
( (المثنی)

> مَاذَا تَخَافُ؟

فَلِمَاذَا لاَ نَذْهَبُ نَحْحْنُ وَنَلْعَبُ جَمِيعًاْ
"أَرْمِلْلُ مَعَنَا غَدُا يَرْتَعْ وَيَلْبَبْ وَإِنَّا لَهُ لَحَافِظُونَ."



 وَأَذِنَ يَعْعُوبُ لِيُو سُفَ.
(من الكتاب: قَصصُ النبِيٌّن - لأبي الحسن علي الندوي - البزء الأول، مع تصريف

(


## V. Complete the rest and answer the following questions in Arabic:

خالد: خلد: (يسأل تلميذين عن الامتحان والنجاح فيه): هل أنتما فر حان أيها التلميذان؟

م: نعم: بخحنا فيه من فضل اللهُ، ونلنا جائزتين ايضا من ناظر المدر سةخ: أتعرفان حميدًا وبجيداً؟ م: نعم: نعرفهما، انّهما ولدان طيبان، وهما ايضًا بجحا فى الامتحان • خ: هل نالا جائزةً في الامتحان؟
م: لا: ما نالا جائزة بل بنحا فقط، لأ نَهما مرضا قبل الامتحان ولزِما الفراشَّ خ: أبَحَحت عابدة وزاهدة فى الامتحان؟ م: نعم: هما أيضا بخحتا ونالتا أرقامًا كثيرة خ: أهما جيدتان في التربية المترلية؟

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ( } \\
& \text { ק: نعم: هما جيدتان فيها } \\
& \text { خ: أتنالان جائزة فيها دائما؟ } \\
& \text { م: تنال جائزتين فى التطريز والحياطة دائما }
\end{aligned}
$$

(Khalid asks two students about the exams and success in it). Are you two happy O two students?
Majid: (he is one of the two students): We two are very happy.
Khalid: Have you been successful in your examinations?
M: Yes, we have succeeded in it by Allah's bounty, and have obtained two awards from the school supervisor.
K: Do you know Hameed and Majeed?
M: Yes I know them. The two are good boys. The two have also been successful in the exam.
K: Did they win an award in the exam?
M: No. They did not win any award but simply succeeded, for the two fell sick before the examination and were bound to the bed.
(Complete the rest)
(المr-ז'المن)

أسئلة:
من سأل التلميذَين عن امتحافْما؟ من ماجدّ؟ ماذا نال الولدان؟ كيف حَميدّ وبيدٌّ ؟ هل نالا جائزتين؟ لماذا الفراش؟ هل لك إخوان؟ كيف هما؟ فى أي مدرسة
 القرآن؟ بأي شىء تخاط الثياب؟

## VI. Translate and answer the following questions in Arabic:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أحمد: كم اخاً لك يا سعيدُ؟ } \\
& \text { سعيد: لي أخوان } \\
& \text { أ: هل هذانِ الأنوانٍ صغيران؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

س: لا، هذان الأخوان ليسـا بِضغيرين، هما اكبر مين
أ: أليس لهذين الأخوين ولعٌ بالعلم؟
س: بلى! لمما ولعٌ شديد بهـ
أ: أليس ذانك الأخوانِ تلميذين؟
س: بلى! ذانك الولدان تلميذان وهما ذكيان أ: أليست فى ذينكَ الولَدَين طاعةٌ للوالِدَين؟ س: بلى! هما نتـيطان فى طاعةِ الوالِدَين؟ أ: كم أختأ لكَ يا سعيد؟ س: لي أختان وهما صغيرتان
أ: أ تقرأ هاتان الأختانِ الكتبَ فى العربية والإنكليزية؟ س: نعم: هما تقران الكتبَ فى هاتِن اللغتين المامتين

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أ: أليــت لماتِن الأختين رغبة فى التربية المترلية؟ } \\
& \text { س: بلى! فمما رغبة شديدة فيها }
\end{aligned}
$$

> أ: أتعمل تانك البنتان أعمال البيت؟
> س: نعم. تانك البنتان تعمالان مع أُمهما، ولا تحسبانِ عمل البيت نقيصة أ: هل اعضاءُ أسرتِك مسرورون بتينك البنتين؟


 عملكم، وكونوا من الكبارالينيار.

## أسئلة:


 يومٍ خلق الله الدنيا؟ٌ كم ركعةً فى صاهة الفجر؟
 هل فى الشهر تسع جُمع؟ بأي شئ الشرف؟

 أتانك الأختان متعلتان؟ ألتينك البتين ولغّ بالعر بية؟

## المبتدأ والحبر

## Grammatical clues:

A complete sentence can be written in a variety of ways. One of them is the "subject-predicate" format (mubtada'-khabar in Arabic). Consider the example "In this sentence the speaker is saying something about a boy: he is small (in other words, "the news" about the boy is that he is small). In this sentence, "the boy" is subject and "small" is the predicate.
In Arabic subject is called المبتدا (al-mubtada') while the predicate is المبر (alkhabar: meaning, "the news). So, in the sentence مبتدأ is الولد , الولد صغير while is its خغر

In most cases, the "mubtada" is definite, i.e., it has an ll the beginning. But not so in complicated sentences.
Also, both the مبتدأ as well as خبر are marfu' that is, either they have a single dammah or two, or, what represents them - such as, a kasra in dual.
Also, the خبر can be a single word, in others, a whole set of words, (or, as they say in Arabic شربُ جُملَة i.e., similar to a sentence). The second set of examples below deals with this type.
You may also note that the mubtada' and khabar match in the following: masculine-feminine and numbers. That is, if mubtada' is masculine, the khabar has also to be masculine. Similarly, if the mubtada' is, say, dual, the khabar will also be dual.
Similarly, mubtada' can be a combination of words.
Then there are sentences where either the mubtada', or its khabar is dropped. At times khabar comes before mubtada'. Finally, there can be more than one mubtada' or khabar. (The last example in table one has several khabar for one mubtada'). Nonetheless, we are not dealing with these complicated sentences presently. Our effort has been to make it as simple as possible. Once you have learnt the basic rules, have developed some vocabulary, and wish to achieve some sort of excellence, you might refer to a few grammar books (since one may not do). We believe that at this point you need not bother about them.
(rr-المبتدأ والخبر)

|  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| The prayer is accepted. | الصّّاهِ مقبولٌ | The boy is small. | الولد صغيرّ | المفد |
| Cleanliness is necessary. | النَّظافةُ واجبة | The Prophet is compassionate | البيُ رؤفّ |  |
| The two rooms are spacious. | الحُجْرَان واسِعَتان | The two books are new. | الكِتَابانِ <br> جديدانِ | التـنيه |
| The two watches are broken. | السًاعَتان كــورتان | The two oceans are spacious | البَحْران واسِعان |  |
| The pious (women) are worshipful. | الصالحاتُ قانتاتٌ | The learned are absent. | العالِمون غائبون | الجمع |
| The gardens are big. | أولَدائِقُ كبيرةٍ | The ignorant are present. | الجـاهلون <br> حاضرون |  |
| Man is wrong-doer, ignorant, unbeliever. |  | الإنسان ظالُّ، جاهلّ، كافرٌ |  |  |

الكلمات الجلديلة:

| Sheep | الغَنمّ | Trustworthy | أُمِينّ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Elephant | فِيل* | Cold | البُرْ8 |
| To accept | قَبِّ | Merchants | التُّجًارُ |
| Thieves | لُصّوصٌ (م: لِّهِّ | To show compassion | ر'أف' |
| The prophet | النَّبِّ | Streets |  |
| Stars | النُجُجُمُ | To appear / rise | طَالِعَةٌ (طَلْع) |

الأمثلة - Y Yَمَا كان الحبُر شِبْهُ جملةٍ)

| The Truth is in Allah's Book. | الحَقُق في كتابِ اللهِ | 1 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Muhammad of the Messengers. | محمّدّ مِّ الرُّسلِ | r |
| Water is in the pond. | الماء فُ البِّكِّرِ | $r$ |
| Revelation is from the seventh heaven. | الوَحْيُ مِنَ السَّماء السَّابِعةِ | $\varepsilon$ |
| The Companions are above doubt trustworthiness. | الصَّحَابَة فوقَ شَكُّ فِ الصِّدْقِ | 0 |
| The watch is under the pillow. | السِّاعَةُ تَحْتَ الوِسادِّةِ | 7 |
| Rest comes after exhaustion. | الرَّاحَةُ بُعدَ التُّعْب | V |

## EXERCISES

## 1. Match the words in table 1 with those in Table 2 :

Table - 1

| (الدجاجة ( ) | ( ) الحر | الزهرة ( ) | الكاجر ( ) | الأستاذ () |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| الجَمَلِ ( ) | الثـمص) | الباب) ( ) | الغُرفْةُ ( ) | الثوب) |
|  | الشُّوارِع | الرجلان ( ) | الكُتُبُ ( ) | الساعتان |

Table - 2

| 0- حاضر | ع - أمين | r- قلدم | r - | 1-1 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| -1- | 9- | 人-1 | -V | 7 |
| ع ا - جديدتان |  | r\| - شهيدان | r - | 11 1 - واسعة |

(المبتدأ والمنبر)
II. Think of a suitable خحر and make sentences from the following not using any of the past sentences in this present lesson.

 / النِّساءُ / الحُجُراتُ.

## III. Translate the following:


يَرْحَمُوا يَعْقُوبَ الشَّيّْنَ الْكَبِيرَ











## The Best of Stories-2

## 4. To the Forest

The brothers were very happy when Ya`qub allowed Yusuf. They went to a forest and cast Yusuf in a well in the forest and were not merciful with the little Yusuf, nor were they merciful to Ya`qub, the old man. Yusuf was a little boy and he had a soft heart The well was deep, and the well was dark, and Yusuf was alone
But Allah gave Yusufglad tiding and told him, "Do not be in grief, nor fear." Allah is with you, and you shall have (a goodly) affair.
(One day) your brothers will come to you and you will inform them what they did
When they were finished with their affair and had thrown him into a well, they got together and said, "What shall we tell our father?"
One of them said, "Our father was saying, 'I am afraid a wolf might eat him.'
So, we will tell him, 'You spoke the truth, O our father, a wolf ate him up.'"
The brothers agreed together over this and said, "Yes, we shall tell our father, 'A wolf ate him up.'"
But one of them asked, "What is the proof of it?"
They said, "Blood is the proof of it."
They took a ram and slaughtered it.
They took Yusuf's shirt and colored it - and the brothers were very happy and said, 'Now, our father will believe us."
(Complete the rest).








$$
4 \text { - يوسف فل البئر }
$$









(من الكتاب: قَصصُ النِّيِّن - لأبي المسن علي الندوي - البزءء الأول، مع تصريف
بسيط)

مَعالين الكَلِماتِ الجَديدةِ:

| tore | شَقَّ | by night | عِشَاءٌ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| free | سَالِلمًا | racing (with each other) | نَسْتِقُ |
| colored | مُصْبٌ | (our) goods | مَتَاعِنَا |
| fabricated | مَوْوْوعة | injure/tear him | جرَحهُ |
| remained | بُقِي | Bed | الْفْرَاشِ |
| fearful | مُوحِشَّ | Forgot | نَسِى |

## IV. Translate and answer the following questions in Arabic:

كتابٌ، كتابان، ولدّ، ولدان - يد، يدان - عين، عبنان - فى الكتابين ـ لِلوالدَين- مـــن

 كفَان - كم مرفقًالك؟ لي مِرفقان - كم عينًا لك؟ الكُ لى عينان - كم أذنُا لك؟ لى أذنان ـ كم عُنُقَالك؟ لي عُقُقٌ واحدٌ ـ ـ كم رجلاُ لك؟ لي رِجالان -
كم ساقًا لك؟ لي ساقان ـ كم رُكبَة لك؟ لي رُكبتانِ ـ كم كعُّالك؟ لي كعبانِ - ماذا تفعل بالعينين؟ أنظر بِهما - ماذا تفعل بالأذين؟ أسمعُ بِهما - ماذا تفعل بالرِّحلين؟ أسير بهما حَيثُ أشاء -
أُخدم الوالدين للسعادة فى الدارين، فإنّ خدمة الوالدين واجبة على الولد، فالا أقـــول لُمها أفِّ ولا أفر هما، ولا أرفع صوتي عندهما فإنّ ذلك من سوء الأدبـ
(Yr-M-المبتدأ والـبر)

## أسئلة:

لماذا تخدم الوالدين؟ مل لك والدانٍ (أبٌ وأم)؟ أخخافهما؟ كيف حالمها؟ هل هما طيبان؟ هل هما شفيقان عليك؟ أفرت الوالدين؟ أقلت لمما أفِّ تارة؟ أتخدم الوالدين؟ ماذا يفعل همما؟ هل كلإنسان رجلان ويدان؟ هل له عنقان؟ بأي شيء ينظُر؟ هل له ساق واحده؟ بأي شيءٍ يسمَع؟ وبأي شیء تسير؟

(نائبُ الفاعل)
(The Passive Verb - Past Tense)

## Rules:

Original form of all verbs is active. Such as, e.g. كَتْ , he wrote. Now, what do you do if you have to make it passive, such as, e.g., you want to say, "it was written?" Well, in Arabic it is pretty simple. Take the active verb, change the harakah of the first radical to dammah, and, change the harakah of the second radical to a kasrah (if it is not already a kasrah). Thus, from كَبَ (he wrote) you get كُتِبَ (it was written). Or, to take another example, from عَلِمَ (he knew) you get عُلِمَ (it was known).
The above rules apply to the transitive verbs (الفِعلُ المُعَعَدِّي). In contrast, the intransitive verbs ( الفعل اللازِم ) do not appear in the passive form. For example, كُرُمْ is an intransitive verb. It means, "he was honorable/noble/generous." That is, the man was noble etc., by himself. The act did not happen on him. In contrast, a transitive verb is one in which one does something to another. E.g., قَتَلِ meaning, "he killed," i.e., he killed someone else. The act of killing was performed on another person. Or, "أَكَل meaning, "he ate," where the act of eating was performed on something else. These are transitive verbs. But in intransitive verbs the act is not performed on another therefore a passive form cannot be made. To give another example, بُرْد meaning "he (or it) went cold." Now, the act of cooling down was not performed on another, but happened to the subject himself/itself.
The point however is, there is no passive for intransitive verbs. And, since verbs wherein the second radical has a dammah are all intransitive, no írهورل is made out of them.
Herewith a table showing the 14 forms in which a passive verb appears in Arabic. The verb فَعَلْ is normally taken as the paradigm to make tables.

It must also be remembered that the object ( المعول به ) of a passive verb does not undergo changes in the harakah. It remains marfoo . For example, in
( the المبز . But it carries a dammah. Also, it is not known as المفعول به after this change. But rather, it is now referred to as نائب . المبزُ , In this case is . الفاعل
The above change is in contrast to the active situation الولد أَكلَ الحبز where الحبز will have a fat-haa.
If you have learnt the above, you have learnt all about the passive verb in the past tense.
(ז६-الماضي المهول)

|  | جدول فعلِ الماضي البحهول: |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | البهول | المعروف |  |
| (It) was done to him | فُعِل | فَعَل | الغائب <br> المذكر |
| (It) was done on two | فُعِ | فُعْل> |  |
| (It) was done on them all | فُعــلوْا | فَعَلو |  |
| (It) was done to her | فُعِلَت | فَعَلَت | الغائب المؤنث |
|  | فُعِلَتا | فَفَلَتا |  |
| (It) was done to those (females) | فُعِلْ | فَعَلْ |  |
| (It) was done to you | فُعِلْتَ | فَعَلْتَ | المخاطب <br> المذك |
|  | فُعِلْفُها | فَعَلْـــتُما |  |
| $\cdot$ | فُعِلْمُم | فَعَلْـــُم |  |
|  | فُعِلْتِ | فَعَلْتِ | المخاطب <br> المؤنث |
|  | فُعلْكُها | فَعْلْــتُما |  |
|  | فُعِلُنْ | فَعْلْـــُنٌ |  |
|  | فُعِــلْتُ | فَفَلْـــــتِ | المـكلم |
| (It) was done to us | فُعـــنـنـ | فَعَلْـــنـا |  |

(₹

الكلمات الجلديدة:

| Time | زَمَانٌ | Ditch | الأُخْدُود |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Seventy | سَبْعِّن (1) | Bloodrelationships | أَرْحَامِ |
| Power/ authority/ right | سُلْطَانا | Badr (a place where a battle | بكر |
| Morning | صبّاحٌ | Fox | ثُعْلْبِ |
| Noon | ظُهُرْ | Jinn | \% |
| Evening | 'rmor | To deny/declare unlawful | حرّمَ |
| Carpenter | نَّحًارٌ | To assemble، to gather | حَشَر |
| To spread | نَشَ | He goat | خَرُوف* |
| To promise | وَعَدْ | To push | دَفِّ |
| Guardian | وكِيّي | Wolf | ذِئْبٌ |


| الأمثلة: |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| الجهول |  | المعروف |  |  |
| Allah was worshiped. | عُبدَ اللُهُ | I worshiped Allah. | عَبَدْتُ اللّهِ | 1 |
| The teacher was praised. | مُدِحَ المُدَرُِّ | We praised the teacher. | مَدَحْنَا المُدَرِّسَ | r |
| The door was opened. | فُتِحَ البَابُ | The boy opened the door. | فَتَحَ الولَدُ البَابِ | $r$ |
| The glass was broken. | كُـرِّ الزُجّاجُ | The cow broke the glass. |  | $\varepsilon$ |
| The letter was therefore written. | فالرسالة كُتبِّن | The boys wrote a letter. | رالأولاد كَتبوا | - |

(


## EXERCISES

I Translate the following:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ا. فُتْلَ أَهْـَـــبُ الأْنْدُودِ (الآية) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 1. قُطِعَت الأرْحَحَمُ في زَمَانِا وعَمَّ الفَسَادُ }
\end{aligned}
$$

## II. Change the following to Majhool and add Harakaat:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 1. هم سَأَلوا عن أَخبارِنا } \\
& \text { r. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ع. شدَّ الولدُ الحبلَ } \\
& \text { ه. الصَّحَابةُ أَسَروا سَبْعِين أسيرًا في البدر } \\
& \text { 7. أكل الذئبُ الحروفَ }
\end{aligned}
$$

(
. أحذ الثعلب الدجاجةَ .V
^. حلبت البنـُ البقرة
9. صنع النجّار كرسيا
.

## III. Write the $\mathbf{1 4}$ conjugations of Majhool verb of the following:

بُ
Rِ

أُذِن

## IV. Translate the following:

1. The food was cooked.
2. The clothes were washed.
3. The camel was loaded with sheep.
4. The flowers will be picked after one month.
5. Those are counted as good who were never questioned about their truthfulness.
6. A large numbers of Jews were killed during (خلال) $2^{\text {nd }}$ World War (الحرب العالمية الثاني).
7. The oppressed Muslims were forced that they lose their country.
8. Allah is not asked for what He does, but the people will be asked.
V. Write the المعروف of the following:


## VI. Translate the following:



(£ (ـ-الماضي البجهول)



## The Best of Stories-3

7. From the Well into the Palace

A group of people were traveling in that forest and they felt thirsty
They searched for a well
They saw a well and so sent a man to fetch them water
The man came to the well and let down his pail
The pail went down and lo, the pail was heavy
He brought it out and lo, the pail had a boy!
The man was amazed and called out: "O good luck. This is a boy."
The people felt very happy and concealed him
They took him to Egypt, stood in the marketplace and called out, "Who will buy this boy?"
"Who will buy this boy?"
The Aziz (Governor) bought Yusuf for a few Dirhams
The merchants sold him while not knowing he was Yusuf
And the Aziz took him to his palace and said to his wife, "Treat Yusuf well. He is a nice boy."
(Complete the rest)
^ - الوفاء والأمانة


وَ غَضِبَتِ امْرَأَةُ الْعَزْيزِ وَ شَكَتْ إِلَى زَوْجِهَا. وَ عَرَفَ الْعَزِيز أَنْ الْمَرْمَةَ كَاذِبَةُ وَ عَرَفَ أَنْ ُُوُ سُفَ أَمِينٌ.

 كَرِيُ."
وَاشْتَدَّ غَضْبُ الْمَرْأَةِ وَ قَالَتْ لِيُوسُفُ: إِذَنْ تَذْهَبَ إِلَى السِّحْنِ! قَالَ يُو سُفُ: "السِّجْنُ أَحَبُ إِلَّ"!"

 وَ دَخَلَ يُوسُفُ السِّحْنَ.

9 - 9 - مَوِظظُة السـجن
 وَ أَنْ يُو سُفَ عِنْدَهُ عِلْمٌ عَظِيمّم.
وَ أَنَ يُ يُسِفَ فِى صَدْرِهِ قَلْبٌ رَحِيمٌ.
وَ أَحَبَّ أَهْلُ السِّحْنِ يُوسِفَ وَ أَكْرْمَوْهُ
وَ فَرِحَ النَّاسُ بِيُو سُفَ وَ عَظَّهُوهُ












 أَ كَيْسَ أَمْلُ السِّجْنِ عِبَادَ اللِّبٌ




(من الكتاب: قَصُصُ النَيِّين - لأبي المسن علي الندوري - البزء الأول، مع تصريف
(६ r-الماضي البهول)

مُعانين الكَلِماتِ الجَديدةِ:


#  <br> (Passive: Present \& Future Tense) 

## Notes:

Making a passive verb out of a mudare ${ }^{\text {' becomes simple if you have understood }}$ how it is done in maadi. Otherwise too it is simple. To the first letter of the مضار ع which is always either an ior a or a ora ن or , and which always carries a fat-haa, give a damma in place. And then give a fat-haa, to the second radical of the triliteral root, no matter what it had before in true mudare` form.
So that يَشْهُذ' (he witnessed) becomes يُشهُ (he/it was witnessed), and (he writes) becomes 'يُتَبُ (it was written).

In the above examples you will notice that in the maadi form شَهِّ , the second radical had a kasrah. But it gets a fat-haa in المضار ع البهول . As noted earlier, intransitive verbs are not converted to majhool form.
(0-1-المضار ع الجهول)

(

الكلمات الجديدة:

To attain, achieve, obtain
To shout, to cry
Twenty
To over come
Coffee
In its place
Banana
Placed

دَرَّ Other (feminine)
Coffee beans
أُخْرَى
البُنُ


To think /
imagine
To cut, to shorten / remove
مَوْ Push / pay
يُوضَعُونَ Tea
الشاي

| الجهول |  | المعروف |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| So, the meat is being cut. | فَاللُحمُ يُطُعُ | The girl is cutting meat. | تَقُعُ البِتُ اللَحمْ | 1 |
| So the cow is being milked. | فالبقرةُ | The woman milks the cow. | تَحْلُبُ المرأهُ البقرة | r |
| So the plane is being ascended into. | فالطائرةُ تُرْبَ | The people ascend into the plane. | يرُكْبُ الناسُ الطائرةً | $r$ |
| The letter was therefore written. | فالغذاءُ بُجْعُع | The bee collects the food. |  | を |
| The girl was inquired about her father's name. | فَاسِمِبْتُ تُسبأَلُ عَن | They inquire the girl about her father's name. | يَسِئُون البنتَ عَن اِسْمَ أبيها | - |

(

## EXERCISES

## I. Translate the following:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { r. r. تُصنع القهوةُ من الُُبنِ } \\
& \text { r. الفاسقون يُوضعونَ على النارِ } \\
& \text { ع. يُشْرُبُ الشايُ في المند مرّةُ أو مرّتين في اليوم ولكن في بالادٍ أخرى يُشْرْبُ } \\
& \text { عشر ين مرّة في اليوم } \\
& \text { ه. إذَا مالا يُدْرَكُ جُلُهُ لا يُتْرَكُ كلُُهُ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ^. . إلى اللّه تُرْبَعُ الأمورُ كلُّها } \\
& \text { 9. مَنْ لا يَرْحَمْ لا يُرْحَمْ (الحديث) } \\
& \text { • ا. يُزْرَعُ الموزُ في الهند ويُؤْكَل في العَا لِم } \\
& \text { I } 1 \text { لَمَّا عملتن الصالمات - يا بنات - تُـــنْكَرْنَ بالخير }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { r r. البَنَاتُ الصَّالِحاتُ تُمْدَحْنَ عَلى لِسَانِ كُلِّ وَامِدٍ }
\end{aligned}
$$

## II. Change the following to Majhool and add Harakaat.



(0 - المضار ع البههول)
III. Write the $\mathbf{1 4}$ conjugations of Majhool verb of the following:

VI. Complete translation and answer the following in Arabic:
م: لأنَّه أخخذ كرّاسةَ صديقهِ بدو نِ اِذنٍ منه.
أ: أضُرِب قبل ذَلك؛ ولماذا؟
م: نعم؛ ضُرب مرة لأنّه كذبَ.
أ: هل يعلم صد يقه أَنّه أخخلَ كرّاستَهُبٌ

م: لا: هو لا يعلم به، بل يأسَف ويقول: فقلتْ كرّاسيَ و كانت فيها معلوماتٌ مفيدة.

أ: أ يُضرَب الولذُ على مثل هذا العمل؟ م: لا يُضرب، لكن يُنصح. لأنه أخذ كرّاسةً اليومَ، وغدأ يأحذ شيئًا ثُينًا، وهذا العملُ يُعَدَ من أعمال اللُصوص.
أ: مَاذا يُفعل باللصوص؟
م: يُقبَض عليهمَ، فيحملون إلى مَحُطْة الشَرطِّ، ثَّ يُسئلون عن الأشياء المسرو قة، فتؤ خذ منهمَ، وتُرَدّ إلى أصحابهًا.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أحمد: سُمِعَ يا محمود! انَ اباك غَضِبَ عَلىَ اَ خِيك؟ } \\
& \text { حمود: نعم. } \\
& \text { أ: لِماذا؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

(0 ب -المضار ع البههول)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أ: ماكان جواب أخيك؟ } \\
& \text { م: ماكان جواب أخي إلآَ أنه ندِم وتاب وقال: "إِّي لا أفعل هكذا مانٍ مرةً اُخري". } \\
& \text { فَنصحه أبي وقال: "لا تأخذذ يا ولدي شيئًا بدون اذِنٍ، واحذَرْ مثلَ هذه الأعمال، وقم } \\
& \text { للأكابر حينما دخلوا عليك واعلم أنَّ أدب الكبار واجب على الصّغارِ. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Ahmad: It has been heard O Mahmud that your father was angry with your brother.
Mahmud: Yes.
Ahmad: Why?
Mahmud: Because he took the notebook of his friend without his permission.
Ahmad: Was he ever beaten earlier?
Mahmud: Yes. He was beaten because he had spoken a lie.
Ahmed: Does his friend know that he took his notebook?
Mahmud: No he does not know about it, but rather he sorrows and says, I have lost my notebook and it had useful information.
Ahmed: Is a boy beaten for this kind of action?
Mahmud: He is not beaten, but admonished; because, today he took a notebook, tomorrow he will take something expensive. And this kind of act is known as the act of the thieves.
(Complete the rest and answer the following questions).

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أسئلة: } \\
& \text { من ضُرب ولماذا؟ كرَّاسةُ كَنْ فُقِدت؟ ماذا كان فيها؟ اي عمل يُعُلُ من أعمال } \\
& \text { اللصوص؟ من نصح أخحا محود؟ ماذا يبب على الصّغار؟ هل فُقِدتْ كفظتكَ تارةٌ؟ } \\
& \text { أيوجد في أعمالنا الإخحاص؟ أيو جد في الشُّبُان ديانةٌ؟ لماذا تمدح البنات؟ هل اُمِرت } \\
& \text { بالصّاذةَ؟ متى يُسأل الناس عن أعماهلم؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

(0-ا-النضارع الجهرلن)

## V. Translate the following:



The Best of Stories-4
10. Yusuf's Wisdom

Yusuf said to himself
Surely, a need has driven these two men to me
Surely, a man in need softens down and acts humbly.
Surely, a man in need obeys and listens
If I am to tell them something, the two will hear, and others of the prison will hear
However, Yusuf did not hasten
But Yusuf did not rush through
(ror-المضار ع الجهولُ)

But rather, said to the two:
I shall inform you of the interpretation of the dream before they bring you your food.
So the two sat down and were at peace
Then Yusuf told them:
I am knowledgeable of interpretation of dreams, "this is one of those things (of your concern) that my Lord has taught me." So, the two felt glad and felt assured.
Yusuf found a break at this point and so began his admonition.
(Complete the rest)

(
 الُّذِينَ مِنْ دْوْنِهِ."



"لَا تَبْدُورا إِلْاُ إِيأَهُ.


r

قَالَ: "أَمَّا اََحَدُكُمَا فَيْمْقَى رَبَّهُ خَمْرْا."






بمبط)

gives
path
I have followed
we should associate
oneness
several
stayed
several years

يُؤْتى The Subduer
طَرِيقَ show me
اكَّعْعْ ا apart from Him
نُشْرُك you have named
He (Him) alone
مُتَفْرَقُوُ
through (with)
سِينينَ will be crucified
a wine server

مَعالي الكَلِماتِ الجَديلدِِ الْقَهًارُ أُرُونى

كسَيَّمُوْو هَا إيانُ الْقَيْمُ فَرَغ يُصْنب

سَاقِيُا

## الأفعال الْمُضَعَفَةَ

## (The Doubled Verbs)

## Rules:

This lesson deals with tri-literal verbs in which a consonant/radical is repeated (i.e., is identical). E.g., مَرْرَ . This was originally

The second and third consonants/radicals separate out at some places in the maadi or mudare forms.
For example, in case of " onwards in the maadi. See the sixth line and then onwards in the table below. The two "raas" have separated out.
Now, as against the general rule that the first radical/consonant of a verb "normally" acquires a jazm/sukoon in the mudaare", e.g., كَبَبَ / يَكْبُ (where the first consonant كَتبَ has a sukoon in the mudaare’, in doubled verbs they can acquire either dammah as in مَدُّ / يَمُدُ (where p is the first

The above changes also affect the vowel signs (harakaat) in mudaare, but we shall not discuss the issue here. As you learn the language, you will improve upon your $i$ 'raab.
(7 (

To pass by الأوزان: تمرَ




## الكلمات الجلديدة:

Speed

Basket
To doubt
سُرْعَة Black
سُلَّ 2 Minimum

## أسْوَدُ

5ifin
أَنْبَاءٌ (مفرد:نَبَأ)
صَدْرٌ My little son
بُنَيَّ
Chest
Party/group
Strange/odd
Family
Plant
غَرْن" To drag
Pockets جيُوبٌ: (م: )

To hold
To tell a story/to cut
قَبَضَ Stone

قَصَ To plough
حَحْرٌ

Villages
To slap
Hopefully
Regretfully
Almond
Goods / luggage
One who masters Hadith

To be tired


عَجيبٌ Oxen
تَوْر
عِبَال" To dry
جَفَّ

こ
جرَ
To separate

حَرَث
Farm, field
حَقْل
كَطَمَ To loosen
Cheeks
خُدُو دٌ
ذَنَبٌ
راوِيٌ
عْتَا To be gentle
رَفقَ
مُحَدِّث Dream
رُؤيْة


In the Hadith (it says) that when Yajuj and Majuj emerge, they will not pass by any water but will drink it off.

The Prophet's hand (saws) never touched the hand of a woman except a woman he owned (ie., a wife).

Do not abuse (insult) my Companions.

The day of the resurrection will be a day، when a man will flee his brother, his wife and his children.

Fulfilled is your Lords' word in truth and justice.

He who deceived us is not of us.
He who dragged his lower garment in pride will not enter Paradise.


O Allah! Whoever shows kindness to my followers, You also show him kindness. And whoever makes it hard on them, you too make it hard on him.


He is not of us who (while mourning) tears off his clothes and slaps himself.


9 9
My son! Finish off (recitation of) the (whole) Qur'an once in a month. This is its least reading.


O pilgrim! Tie up your belongings touch the Black Stone, stretch your two hands in supplication, and return to your family, for your absence is hard on them.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { يَاحاجُّ شُدَّ مَتَاعَكَ وَمُسَّ الحـجرَ } \\
& 11 \\
& \text { عِيَالِك لأنْ فِراقَك يَشُـــقُ عَلَيهـم }
\end{aligned}
$$

## EXERCISES

I. Give the المضارع ، الأمر ، النـــهـى of the words below:

(ry-الأْفعال الْمُضِعَعَةَ)


## II. Translate the following:

- الوقت يَمرُّ مرَّ السَّحَابِ

يَشُقُّ عَلَينا فِر اقَكَظك
فَ فَاقْصُصِ الْقَصَصَ لَعَلْهُ يَرِجُعُونَ إلى دِينهِمَ
६- الدَّالُ عَلَى المَيْرِ كَفاعِلِّهِ (الحديث)

-     - ذلكُ من أنبْاء القُرى نَمُصُّهُا عَلِك

-V
- ی
- 
- 
- الَيوَ - لِلأَسَفَ - كَيْرِ مِنَ التُّجَّارِ يَغُشُّونَ النَّاسَ
- I Y
r
شَ



## 

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { - IV } \\
& \text { - 1^ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أَنَهُ تَعِبَ مِن تَورِهِ - فَحَلَ الثورَ مِن الحَبِل، فَفرَ الثَّورُ، والبنـتُ هَربّتْ مِنه - } \\
& \text { فقَبَتَ المرأة على حَبلِ الثُور، وَالثَورُ يبر المرأَة، المرأَةُ تَسُبُ الثورُ، وُالبنِتُ } \\
& \text { تُضحك والزَار عُ يَعُدُّ المُبْزَ في السَّلًّة. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## III. Translate the following:

1. Pour some tea into the cup.
2. What do they write when a book ends?
3. Do they write: "it is finished"?
4. If you play with him he will deceive you.
5. Don't tell me stories, O storyteller.
6. The people of the book wish that you disbelieve as they have disbelieved.
7. Those days have passed, do not wait for them to return.
8. What does the search (بحث) leads?
9. The Haji did his hajj last year.
10. It is doubtful whether this torn piece of cloth is useful.
11. He intended to reply to the letter (رسالة) but he fell sick (مرض).

(1)

## IV - Translate the following:



رَّا















The Best of Stories-5
13. The King's Dream

And the king of Egypt saw a strange dream
(דץ-الأْفعال الُْضْتَعَفَة)

He saw seven fat cows in his dream
These seven cows were being eaten by seven lean cows
Also the king saw seven green ears (of corn) and seven dry ears
The king was surprised by this strange dream and asked his courtiers about their interpretation
They said, "This is nothing. A sleeper sees things that have no (existence in) reality."
But the wine-server said, "No. But rather, I will let you know of the interpretation of this dream."
And the wine-bearer went to the prison and asked Yusuf about the dream of the king
Yusuf was generous, honorable, (who) did not know miserliness.
So Yusuf informed about the interpretation and led to the (correct) management (of the affair)
He said, "You will sow for seven years, but leave what you harvest in its ears, except for the little that you will consume
Thereafter there will be a general drought (starvation) in which you will consume what you would have saved, but for a little.
This drought will last for seven years.
Thereafter will come the help and the people will have in plenty.
The wine-bearer went to the king with the interpretation of his dream.
(Complete the rest)


## 10 - يوسف يطلبُ التحقيقَ







 السُّجْنِ وَخْرَجَج وَكَكِنَّ يُوسِفَ لَمْ يُسْرِّعْ





بمبط)

## مُعانيِ الكَكِماتِ الجَكيدةِ:




## V. Complete the rest and answer the following questions in Arabic:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { سعيد: من أين يا هميدُ؟ } \\
& \text { حميد: من دهلي. } \\
& \text { س: لماذا ذهبت اليها؟ } \\
& \text { ح: ذهبت لوداع خالي وهو ذاهبٌ لِحَجٍ بيت الله } \\
& \text { س: هل حَجّ ابوكَ يا حميد؟ } \\
& \text { ح: نعم، حجّ ابي بفضل الله. } \\
& \text { س: أحجَّ أعمامُك؟ } \\
& \text { ح: أُظُنُ انْهُم قَد حجُوا } \\
& \text { س: أ يُع جميع الــلمين؟ } \\
& \text { ح: لا: بل ذوسعة منهم يُُجُون. } \\
& \text { س: أ حجَّتْ أمك وعماتك؟ } \\
& \text { ح: لا: ما حجّت أمي، ولا عمّاتي حججن الي الان } \\
& \text { س: ميت يُجُجْن؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

(7-الأنعال الْمُضَعْفَة)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ح: يُظَنّ أكننّ يكججن في السنة القادمة. } \\
& \text { س: أ أنت حججت مع أبيك؟ } \\
& \text { ح: لا: أنا ما حججت مع أبي، ولكن أحُجٌ في قادم الزمان. } \\
& \text { س: أظنْ أنك ياحميد بحدُ للامتحان كثيرا } \\
& \text { ح: نعم: آجدَّ يا أخي، ولكن ما تَمَّتِ الكتبُ بِلي الان. } \\
& \text { س: أظن أنكّ بتحدّ كثيرا للنجاح العظليم. }
\end{aligned}
$$

ح: لا، يا أخي: إني أجدّ للنجاح فقط، أين أنا من النجاح العظيم، رإنّه لِلتَّلاميذ


س: أظُنُّ ياهميدُ: أنك ذكي وبكتهلٌ ومُؤدبٌ أيضاً. انت سرَرْتَ أكابرَكَ بعلمكَ


Saeed: From where O Hameed?
Hameed: From Delhi.
Saeed: Why did you go to it?
Hameed: I went to say farewell to my uncle who is going for pilgrimage of the House of Allah.
Saeed: Has your father performed his pilgrimage O Hameed?
Hameed: Yes, my father performed his Hajj, by Allah's grace.
Saeed: Have your uncles performed Haji?
Hameed: I think they have performed the Hajj.
Saeed: Do all Muslims perform Hajj?
Hameed: No, but those able do it.
Saeed: Did your mother and aunts perform Hajj?
Hameed: No, my mother did not perform Hajj, nor have my aunts performed Hajj till now.
(Complete the rest and answer the following questions in Arabic).

هل حجَّ ابو سعيدٍ؟ أحجّ أعمامه؟ أحجّت أخواته؟ ي أي شهر يــــجُّ المـــسلمون؟ أحججت أيها الو لد؟ أظننت أن الحجّ فرض على جميع الــلمين؟ أســـررتَ بعلمـــك
 الاولاد؟ أتُوَدُون لأصدائقكم بنحاحأ؟ أحججت أيتها البنت؟ أتحججن أيتها البنـــات؟ أيودُ زينَة الديانة؟ أ تُؤَدِّي الصالاة في المساجد؟

## VI. Write the maadi and mudaare` of the following:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (جدَ). أنَّنَ (جدَ). نَن (سرّ). أنتم (ظنّ) }
\end{aligned}
$$

## VII. Complete the rest and answer the following questions:









أيها الاولاد! كونو صادقين ولاتكونوا كاذين، وكونوا بكتهدين ولاتكونوا كُسالي،
 الوبال، ولاتظُنوا أنُ ايامَ السرورِ تَدومُ ولاتضُروَا أحداً ولا ترُّورا نصيحَّ ناصحِ أبداً،
 والله شـديد العقابِ.
ويا ايتها البنات: كُنَّ متعلماتِ، ذواتِ دِيانة ولا غافات عن الله، واسرُرن بآدابكنّ
 في الدعاء إلى الله فقط، إِنَ اللَّ لَــميعُ الدعاءِ.

O boy! Get out of sleep before the sunrise. Look at the atmosphere, how the morning breeze moves, how the birds twitter. So you stand before your Lord and worship Him and be not of the heedless.
O dear boy! Be kind, and be not an oppressor. And be thankful upon the favors of your Lord and do not be ungrateful over them. And stretch your hand before Allah, and do not stretch them before anyone save Him.

O dear girl! Be seekers of knowledge and be not an ignorant one. For ignorance is the source of foolishness. And give pleasure through your character to the members of your family. Hold fast unto religiosity and modesty. And act by the affairs of the religion and do not go out well-adorned without a veil for its end is abominable.
(Complete the rest)
اسئله:
أ تَبٌُ الريح دائماً؟ مت تغرد الطيور؟ أ مددت يدك للسؤال إلى أحد؟ هل أعــــاء
أسرتك مسرورون بك؟ أضللت الطريق تارة؟ أ تضرُالناس؟؟ أضررتَ أحدا؟ أ تــــورم

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { للسئ ال؟ أ تودّون الديانة؟ أيهتا البنات! أ تمددن يد السيّوال الي أحد؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

## (7 (الأنعال الْمُضْتَفَةَ)

VIII. Write the maadi of mudaare and mudaare of maadi in the following:
 تظنّون، وددت، ضررتِ، ضلّوا، أردّد، رددتَ، نرّد، رفضتم، قلتنّ، تخيطون، نبيع، بعت، مددنا، أمجئ، رحتم، وجلدت، تصلون، تكنس، خحبزت، , تعجنين، تُشين، حلبتم، رُدّت، تحجّين، تُمّون، نردّ، ضررتّ، أضرّ، سررنا، أسُرّ.

(Hamzated Verbs)

## Clues:

The class of verbs that we deal with here is classified as "weak verbs" or "imperfect." A normal or perfect verb is one which is free of any of these: همزة،
(أ) . (It should be obvious that the rules apply to the verb when it is in the maadi form.
Now, such verbs as which have a hamza in it, whether at the beginning, as in الَمهوزز سَاَلَ (hamzated).
It is extremely rare that there should be a tri-literal verb which has two hamzaas in it.
In actual fact, there is nothing special about this class of words that we should have a lesson on it. But, to a student it is a bit confusing to figure out how the root word changes its forms in maadi, mudaare`, or mr. We have explained by providing tables.
There are three tables: for such verbs in which the hamza is at the beginning, such verbs in which it falls in the middle, and such verbs in which it falls at the end.

As we see it, the rest is simple. You need to take words and practice making tables.

الكلمات:


|  |  |  | الكلمات الملديدة: |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Charity | صَدَقة | Things | أشياءٌ (مفرد: شيء) |
| Forgiveness | عَفُوٌ | Stomach | بُطْنٌ |
| Promise / oath / covenant | عَهْهٌ | Virgin | بك |
| Obscene | فُحْشٌ | Friday | جحمُعٌ |
| Permitted | مأذونٌ | Tributary/ earning/ reward | خَرْجّ ونَّاجِّ |
| Well-known/ good acts | مَعْرُف | To address | خَطْبِ |
| Pulpit | مِنْرٌ | Chaff, straw | عَصْ |
| Tongue | لِسَان | A short nap, doze, slumber | سِنَّ |
| Orphan |  | Chapter | سؤرِّ |

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أوزانُ مهموزِ الفاء }
\end{aligned}
$$

أخذ: to hold/take


يأخُذُ / يؤخَذُ
الجهول: أَخَذَ / أُحِّذ

أوزان مهموز العين


الجهول:

> (

أوزان مهموز اللام
قرأ: to read

| اسم المفول | اسم الفاعل | المضارع | الماضي |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| مَمَرْوء | قَارِئٌ | يَقْرَا | قَرَأِّ | المذكر الغائب <br> $3^{\text {rd }}$ Person <br> Masculine |
| مَقْرُوآن | قَارئان | يَقْرَآنِ | قَآّ |  |
| مَقْرُوؤونِ | قَارِئونَ | يَقْرَؤُونِ | قَرَعوا |  |
|  |  | تَقْرْا | قَرَأَّا | المؤنث الغائب <br> $3^{\text {rd }}$ Person Feminine |
|  |  | يَقْرَانِ | قَرَأَتَا |  |
| النهى | الأمر | يَقْرَانِ | قَرَأْنَ |  |
| لا تَ0ْ\% | إِّ |  | قَرَأِ | المذكر المخاطَبْ <br> $2^{\text {nd }}$ Person <br> Masculine |
| لا تَقْرَا | إِّرْا | تَقْرَانِ | قَرَأْتُما |  |
| لا تَقْرَؤُوا | إِرَؤُورا | يَقْرَؤُونِ | قَرَآتُمْ |  |
| لا تَقْرْئي |  | تَقْرَيْينَ | قَرَأتِ | المؤنث المخاطَبْ <br> $2^{\text {nd }}$ Person Feminine |
| لا تَقْرَا |  | تَقْرَآنِ | قَرَآتمْا |  |
| لا تَقْرْأِنَ | إِرَأْنَ | تَقْرَأِنَ | قَرَأْنَّ |  |
|  |  | أَقْرَ | قَرَأُقُ | المذكر والمؤنث <br> المتكلم <br> ${ }^{\text {st }}$ Person Masculine \& Feminine |
|  |  | نَقْرْ | قَرَأنْا |  |




## Examples of other words:

| To slow/cool down |  | To fill | مَـــلُّ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| To fasten hope / to hope | رَجـــــاً | To command | أمرَ |
| To reward | جزَ1\% | To grow / To rise |  |
| To hide | خبا | To spread |  |
| To put off/postpone | نسَأًا | To put off (light) |  |
| To create | برّ | To take prisoner | أسرّ |
| To show mercy | رَأَف | To feel pain | ألـ |
|  |  | To be tired/ bored | سَهِ |

Begin reading the Qur'an and fill your heart with peace.

Begin with that with which Allah began.

Eat and drink and thank Allah.
Eat what is in the vessel, you are allowed.

Who can intercede with Allah except the one whom the Merciful permitted?


Verily, Allah orders you charity, while Shaytan orders you indecencies.

Surely those who devour wealth of the orphans wrongfully, are filling their bellies with fire.

Hisham's mother said, "I did not take the chapter, 'Qaaf! And by the Noble Qur'an' but from the Prophet's tongue who used to recite it on every Friday, on the rostrum when he addressed.
 وَالشيطان يأمر كم بالفَـــحشاء إنَّ الَّذِينَ يَأْكُلونَ َأَمْوْالَ الْيْتَامَى ^ (الآية)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { عن أُم هشام: مَا أَخَذتُ سورةً } \\
& \text { "ق- وَالقُرُ آنِ المَجيدِ" إلاَّا عَن رِسَانِ } \\
& \text { رَسُولِ اللَّهِ (ص) يَقْرَؤُهَا كُلَّ يَومِ } \\
& \text { جُـُـــعٍ عَلى المنبر إذا خَطَبَ. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## EXERCISES

## I. Translate the following:




## II. Translate the following:

1. He began to beat him.
2. The two questioned him about him.
3. They will all be questioned about their deeds in the hereafter.
4. The reader read a book much read.
5. Do not eat too much and do not ask too many questions.
6. The commander filled their hearts with love.
7. She began to fill the pot with stones.
8. This tree will grow only after a long time.
9. Girls! Do not take to eating before we begin to eat.
10. Roads are filled with water after every rain.
11. Read in the name of your creator.
12. Slow down man, do not read so fast.
13. O Reader! Do not fill the book with words.
III. Change the underlined past tense verbs to present tense.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (1) قر أتُ عِدّة صفحاتٍ من هذا الكتاب ورئــتُ. } \\
& \text { (Y) أ قرأتِ الصحف المسائية يا فاطمة ؟ } \\
& \text { (Y) ما يئس المؤمن قطُ من رحمت اللهُ (Y) } \\
& \text { (६) من الذى جرُؤ على فتح خز انتى بدون اذنى؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$



$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (0) أ بدأتم كلّ عمل باسم اللهّ ؟ } \\
& \text { (7) (7) لم تر كتم الشبابيك مفتوحةً أ أمِنتم السرقة ؟ } \\
& \text { (V) أ أخذت أو لادكم معكم إلى شاطئ البحر ؟ (V) } \\
& \text { ( أسن الماء بسبب طول المكث. } \\
& \text { (9) من الذى أمّ الناس فى غياب الامام ؟ } \\
& \text { ( ) ( ) ملا سألتمونى عمّا أشكل عليكم! }
\end{aligned}
$$

IV. In the following verses point out the Hamazated verbs and give their (past, present imperative conjugations):

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (1) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (0) يا ايها الّذينَ آمنوا كلوا من طيّبات ما رما رزقناكم. (الآية) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (V) وإنَّه لا يَيْسِ من روح اللهّ إلا القومُ الكافرونَ. (الآية) }
\end{aligned}
$$

V. Write the complete tables of ماضي، مضار f، أمر، فیى، فاعل for the following words:
أكر
بدأ
رَأَف


## Clues:

Just as there are articles (or particles, or حُروف ) that give a fat-haa or kasra to a noun, there are particles that give a fat-haa or sukoon to مضارع that immediately follow it. They are known as nawaasib ( ناصب pl. of meaning: one [a particle] that gives a nasab or fat-haa). And the mudaare` after a naasib is referred to as Subjunctive Imperfect Verb. (But this is just by the way, otherwise you can ignore these terrifying technical terms). But, as against nouns, there are no particles that give a kasra to مضارع. In contrast to a noun, which never gets a sukoon (jazm). And of course, when we say a word has a dammah or kasrah, or whatever else, we mean the last consonant/letter ( خرْ \(\quad\) ) of the word in question. It might also be pointed out at this juncture that since the triliteral verb is the root, no particle can change its harakaat. In other words, a maadi does not undergo harakaat changes. The same applies to amr (imperative). Thus, it is mudaare` alone that undergo harakah changes.
Hereunder, we deal with such of the particles that give nasab to the mudare' that follows. There are many. But, at the moment we deal with only six of them. The rest will follow in another, advanced lesson.
What happens is simply as follows: When one of these particles appear before a
 appears before it - the rule being the mudaare should follow the particle immediately, and not be part of another phrase within the sentence..
There ends the matter; except to note that in case of dual and plural, the noon is dropped to express the fact that the mudare is mansoob (or maftooh).
So that يعملان becomes يعملا when an il is added to it, or يعملون becomes when either of the following: أنْ / لنْ / لامُ كَيْ / كَيْ / إذَنْ / حتِّى i أنوا is added.

Note that in يعملو an alif has been added, but which is not pronounced.
Also note that the noon of third person feminine plural ( يَفْعَلْن ) and second person feminine plural ( تَفْعَلْنَ ) is not dropped when one of these particles appears before them.

There is nothing to add to the above (!) except that the rules also apply to the بكهول form of mudaare`.


Y الأمثلة:

The Prophet said, "A Prophet will not be buried except where he died."

The unbelievers think they will not be resurrected.

(-rA اصـبُ الفعلِ المضار ع)

The Prophet said, "A man who was present at Badr and Hudaybiyyah will never enter the Fire."

So that he might not know anything after the knowledge.
قال رسول لانهُ (ص) : لَنْ يُدْلَل
i الَّار



 He made the night and the day so that you might rest therein.

 جَميعاً أو أَشْنَاتا (الآية)

If not for me making it hard upon my people, I would have ordered miswakbrushing (i.e., would have made it mandatory).

الكلمات الجلديدة:

( (ی-نراصبُ الفعلِ المضار غ)

Sincere

## EXERCISES

Note hereonwards that it is not necessary that exercise questions should relate to the lesson being dealt with alone. We feel freer to ask questions that relate to any of the preceding lessons.

## I. Translate to the following:

وقال موسى إن تكفروا أنتم ومَنْ في الأرض فإن اللّه لــــنــنـّى حميد (الآية)



$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { وع وعسى ان تَكْرهوا شيئــا وهو خيرٌ لكم (الآية) } \\
& \text { r. r. r. } \\
& \text { ع. أَيْهْ بُ أَن لُن يَقْدِرَ عَلَيْهِ أَحَدٌ (الآية) } \\
& \text { ه. اللّهُ الذي جعلَ لَكُمْ الأنعامَ بِـــتر كَــُبوها }
\end{aligned}
$$

ع يا أيها الناس : إن اللّهَ يأمرُكُمُ أَنْ تَحْكُمُوا بالعَدلِ ه 1 . إن اللّهَ لا يَغفِر أن يُشرَكَ به (الآية)


 19 19 r. Y
 إنّ آية ملكه أن يأتيكم التابوت (الآية) إنَهم لن يضرّوا الله شيئًا (الآية)
 (الآية)

> Y
> وما كان لنفسٍ أن تُوت إلا بإذنِ اللهِ (الآية) ق قل لن ينفعكم الفرارُ إن فررتَ من الموتِ (الآية) rq ولن بَد لسنة الله تبديلاً (الآية)

## II. Fill in the blanks with the accusative form of the verb in the bracket.

٪

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ( ( } \\
& \text { ه أنحاف أن . . .................................... سركّ (يفشو) } \\
& \text { צ يمب أن ............... يديك قبل أن ............... الطعام (تغسلين، تأكلين) } \\
& \text { V الغيبة أن ................................................ أخاكم. . } \\
& \text { ^ } 1 \text { قال الأب لأبنائه : يكزنى أن .......................... عن الصالة (تغفلون) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { • لن . لا . }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ها } 1 \text { لا يبرز أن . . أ..................................... }
\end{aligned}
$$

## III. Translate the following:

1. It is important that you count the chicken.
2. I went so as to visit the sick.
3. I will never hit a cat.
4. It was not for a man to beat a child.
5. Do good deeds so that you are successful.
6. I came so as to sit with you.
7. It was not for the bird to be imprisoned in the cage.
8. Do not enter until you are permitted.
9. We will never go out of the room until the sun sets.
10. Do not read in weak light otherwise your sight will become weak.
11. I will never lie to any one.
12. They opened the window so that air could enter.
13. It pleases me to look at the sea for a while.
14. If you do not open the window, the air will get dirty.

## جَوَاذِمُ الفعلِ المضارِع عِ

## Clues:

This lesson should offer no difficulty, for, all that has been stated as rules with reference to the nawaasib (نواصب) apply to the jawaazim (جوازِم pl. of جازِم meaning: one [a particle[ which gives a jazm [or sukoon].
And the mudaare after a jaazim is referred to as Jussive Imperfect Verb.
Thus, نَذْمَبْ becomes نَذْمَبْ with a لَمْ immediately preceding it.
Once again, there are several such حوازم but we are presenting only a few here.
The rest will follow later.
Those others that we shall deal with later are:

The rules about the noons in dual, plural, and feminine are the same as in case of نواصب becomes يسمعونَ, presented in the previous lesson. So م يسمعو ل
And, of course, the بضار ع بهول undergoes similar changes.
One another thing you may note is that there are certain articles/particles (prepositions) that give sukoon "not to one" but to two mudaare" that follow it. Examples of these are given below in the second table.

## Those articles which give sukoon to one مضار ع

We did not go to the garden yesterday.

The man went in the morning and has not yet returned.


Let Ali open the door.
So let Man laugh less.



Those articles which give sukoon to two المضارع verbs:

If you serve you will be thanked.
He who stays awake a lot will get sick.


In example two above 4 has the meaning of "not yet", or an act that is hoped for. But when it is used in the sense of "whenever" or "when" then it does not give sukoon to the مضار ع that follows, as example 7 (In example 6 it comes before a ماضي and hence it has no effect).

When I went, I did not find him.

الأمثلة:
The boy did not memorize his lesson and I do not see him passing.
The day has passed but the rain did not come.
r ذَهبَ اليومُ ولمَيْنْرل الَّطَرُ

How will the students succeed when they have not stayed awake
كَيْفَ يَنْحَحُ التلاميذُ ولَمَّا يَسْهروا at nights?
। لمَ يَحْفُ ولدٌ دَرْسَه و لم أَرَهُ يَنْجَحُ


يفرحُ بِكُم الُبُسْتَانيُ لَمَّا تَدْشُلون الَديقِةَ

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { I لَمَّا ذهبتُ ما وجدْثّه }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { الَسجحدِ لَمَّا يَدْخُلونون فيه } \\
& \text { 人 الأَولادُ لمَ يَمْمْعُوا نَصيحَّةَ والدِهم } \\
& \text { q الوَلَدَان لم يَسْمْعَا نَصحهة والدهما }
\end{aligned}
$$

(rq-جوازمُِ الفعلِ المضارِّ)

Let those thank Allah among whom appeared the Messenger.

ه فَلْيْتُكُرُ اللَّهَ الذين ظَهَرَ فيهم الرسولُ If you sit in the sun a lot you will get sick.
Therefore, whoever sits in the sun a lot will regret.

$$
\text { } 1 \text { إن تَجْلِسْ في الشَمسِ كَثيراُ تَمرَضْ }
$$ فَمَنْ يَجْلِس في الشّمسِ كَثيراً يَنْدُمْ

الكلمات الجلديدة:
To keep awake
In the morning
Ever
قَطِّ Silk
صباحاً To stay, be steadfast

كَبَتِ
حَرير
To feel/touch
To be present
حَضرْ

## EXERCISES

## I. Translate the following:



مِنْكُمْ (الآية)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (ra-جَوازِمُ الفعلِ المضارع) } \\
& \text { • ا. صَنَعَ رسول اللّه (ص) شيئًا لَمْ يَصْنَهُ قَطٌٌ (المديث) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { كَيفَ أَفْعَلُ شَيْئاً لَمْ يَفْعْلُ رَسولُ اللّهِ (قَاله أبو بكر) } \\
& \text { ب ا. ان تحفظ السرَّ تكنْ موضـَ ثِقَةِ الناسِ } \\
& \text { ع ا. . ان تقض بالعدل يرض الله عنك } \\
& 0 \text { ا } 1 \text {. . من يعمل سوء يَنَلْ جزاءَه } \\
& 7 \text { ا } 1 \text {. من يكن عجولا تكثرْ زلَلُُ } \\
& \text { ماتَزْرَعْهُ اليومَ تَحْصُهُهُ غداً . . . V V } \\
& \text { كيفما يَكُنْ المرءُ يُكُنْ قَرِينْهُ } \\
& 19 \\
& \text { Y. }
\end{aligned}
$$

وم ro
YY Y Y
فمن يعمل مثنقال ذرةٍ خيراً يرهٌ (الآية) YV

## II. Translate the following:

1. The boy did not memorize his lessons.
2. Muhammad (saws) did not write the Qur'an.
3. If your brother leaves, you may eat.
4. If you eat too much you will get sick.
5. If you go near the fire you will feel the heat.

$$
\text { ( } q \text {-جَوَازِمُ الفعلِ المضار ع) }
$$

6. The farmer did not milk the cow.
7. The boy has become big but has not yet written a word.
8. The man went but has not yet returned.
9. Let the women be quiet.
10. Let him work, or he will not be paid.
11. Whoever eats too much will get sick.
12. Whoever tires himself now will be happy tomorrow.

## III. Translate the following using articles as given:

a) Using لَمْ

1. He never went but for a short while.
2. The girl did not eat, did not drink, and did not play.
3. Do you not know that Allah has power over every thing?

4. Allah has not yet known the persevering among you.
5. The sun has set but the patient has not eaten.
c) Using لام أمر
6. Let the people thank Allah for His blessing (نعمة) of life.
7. Let the boy do his work and then let him play.
8. Let them do good deeds so as to be rewarded.
d) Using إنْ
9. If you read, you will know.
e) Using
10. Whoever worked, will be successful.

## Common:

1. They did not do good works so as to be rewarded.

IV. Re-write the following sentences by adding the particle given in the brackets to the underlined verbs and make necessary changes.
(ل)
(
(ل)
(1)
(
(ل)
( $ا$ )
(ل)
( ${ }^{( }$)
(1)
( 1 )
(ل)
(y)
(b)
(У)

ا. يا فاطمة تقولين الحمد لله على كل حالٍ r. رُ رُقاؤك يَحضرون اليوم r. r. تَمُدُُ يد الصداقة الى الغريب

ه. يا عائشة ! أ تَرَينَ كيف يجزى اللهُ الصالحين 7. تَهُّون حياتكم لإعلاءِ كلمةِ اللّ
v
^. نَعزمُ على بناء بحد الأمة 9. يُطُُعُ فجرُ اليومِ


r r. تَشُرُبون بعد الجرى
 § 1. أ تَلَبَسَ الملابس الضِيِّقة يا فتيات ؟
 17. تَسَعِينَ فى أذى غير كن يا نساء !
(rq-جَوازِمُ الفعلِ المضار ع)
V. Use the conjugation given in the brackets and re-write the following pairs of sentences in a single sentence. The first one is done for you as an example.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (1) مثال : (ا) تضربنى / اضربك (إن) (ب) إن تضربنى أضربك } \\
& \text { r } \\
& \text { r- ت ت } \\
& \text { ع - } \\
& \text { - - أ يكثر فراغ الثبان / يكثر فسادهم (آَيَّنَ) } \\
& \text { - } 1 \text { - يأتى فصل الصـف / ينضجُ العنب (متى) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { - } \\
& \text {-9 تكونون / أزورُكم ان شاء الله( (أينما ) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 11-1 تكون الظروف / لا أكذبُ (مهما) }
\end{aligned}
$$

VI. Translate the rest and answer the questions in Arabic, (lesson 39)

اَلبَّاتُ الطُّبِاتُ
البنات الطيبات يحذرن السيئآتِ ويعملن الصالحات ويخدمن الأمهات ويصحبن العالمات وينصرن المسكينات ولايخرُجن من بيوتِهنّ بدون إذن. ولايفخَرْن .عمالِهن ولابيمالمن ولا بُاسرگِّن ولايتبعن رواجًا مذموما ولايصحبن البناتِ
 وشاكرات فى كل الاحوال، فيهن حياء ابصارهن غضيضة ولايتر كن الصلاة في حال
(rq-جُوازمُِ الفعلِ المضارعِ)

ويقرأن كتبا فى العربي والإنكليزى، ولايرغبن عن الألعاب الرياضية، ويلبَسْن لباسا يستر اجسامهن ويحذرن لباسا رقيقا ضيقا، فيمدحُهنّ كل واحد فى البيت وفى المدرسة ولايحسبن العمل نتيصةٌ وماهن كبناتٍ يتُعنَ الغنياتِ ولايصحبن الصالحات ولا يخذرن السيئآت وهن قد قرأن كبناكثيرة ولكن لايعرفن شيئاً فى التربية المرلِيَّة فلا يقدرنَ على صُنع إِامٍ او خبز-

Good girls avoid the evils and do righteous deeds. They serve their mothers and keep company of the knowledgeable. They help the poor women and do not leave their houses without permission. They do not take pride in their wealth, or in their beauty, or in their family. They do not follow undesirable customs and do not live in the company of the rich nor do they envy them but rather they are satisfied with their lot. They do not see in simple dress any defect. They are patient, and thankful in every situation.
(Complete the rest and answer the following)

أَيرغبن في العمل؟ هل فى البنات الطيبات حياء؟ أ يكسبن اعمال البيت نقيص؟ كيف ابصارهن؟ من يفعل الحسنات؟ من يصحب الصالحات؟ أَيخبزن؟ هل تكنسُ البنات؟ هل يعملن مع امِّهِنَّ اعمال البيت؟ الصلاة؟

أ تلعب البنات فى الليلة المقمرة؟ هل تنفعُهُنَّ التربية المترلية؟ هل تتبع البحاهلين؟ أَ تحسد احدا؟ أَ تصحب العالماتُ الجاهلات؟

## مِثال

## Rules:

Grammar books refer to these (as well as to اللفيف and الأحْوَف which follow [lessons 41, 42 and 50]), as weak verbs ( الفِعلُ المُعْتَ ) : simply because they have an 1 or a $و$ or a ي in the tri-literal root.

Mithaal are such verbs as have either a or a a at the beginning in the triliteral verbs.
Therefore, of them there are two kinds: مِالُ واوي which have a $و$ at the beginning, and مثال يائي which have a ي at the beginning.
These are no different from other tri-literal verbs, in any way, except that for a student they offer some difficulty in constructing the tables. Hence a table covering مضارع and is given herewith. Also given is a second table showing the form they take in other areas of the grammatical constructions.
Similarly a simple table is made covering مثال يائي .
If we have not made a second table covering other grammatical constructions for مثال يالي , it is because the usage is so rare. There is no point in you bothering yourself about it here.
(• ع -مبـال)

1- أوزان مثال (واوي)

| النهى | الأكر | المضارع | الماضي |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | يُضْ | وَضَعْ |
|  |  | يُضْعِّ | ورضعَا |
|  |  | يَضِعُونِ | وَضْعُوا |
|  |  | تَضعُعِ | وِضَعْتْ |
|  |  | يَضْعانِ | وَضْتَا |
|  |  | يَضْعْنِ | وَضْعْنَ |
| لا تَضْعْ | ضّهْ | تَضِعُعِّ | وَضْعْتِ |
| لا تَضْعا | ضَعًا | تَضْعانِ |  |
| لا تَضْعُوا |  | 'تَعِّونْ |  |
| لا تَضْعِي | ضْبِي | تَضْعِنَ | وِضْعْتِ |
| لا تَضعا | ضعًا | تُضْعَانِ | وَضْغْتُّما |
| لا تَضْعْنِ | ضَعْنِ | تَضْعْنَ | وَضْتْـُتِّ |
|  |  | أَضَعُ | وضضْتْ |
|  |  | نَضُعُعِ | وُضَعْنا |

وقف / يَقِفُ: To stand, to stop
ودّ / يَوَدُ: To wish, love
(• ع -مِثال)

| $\begin{aligned} & \text { الجهولارل } \\ & \hline \text { المضو } \end{aligned}$ | الماضى <br> الجهول | إسم <br> المفول | إسم الفاعل | النهى | الأمر | المضارع | اللماضي |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| يُوْضِعُ | و'ضِعِ | مَوْوْوُو | واضِّ | لاتَضْعٌ | ضِّ | يضَعُ | ورضِّ |
| يُوقِفُ | وُقِف | مَوْقُوفٌ | و'اقِف" | لاتَقِفْ | قِفْ | يَقِفٌ | وقَفِ |
| يُوردُ | وردّ | مَودودٌ | وادٍ | لاتود | وُد | يوَوَدِّ | ورّ |

## Some common words of this class:

| To be obligatory | يَجبِ | وَجَبْ | To weigh | يَزِنُ | وزَنَ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| To leave alone | يَدِّعُ | و'دِّ | To give birth | يَلِّ | ولَدَ |
| To promise | يَحِدُ | وعَدُ | To let alone | يَخِر | وَذرَ |
| To circumscribe | يِسِعُ | وسِعِّ | To bestow | يَهِبُ | وَهَبْ |
| To make clear, to explain | يُضِحُ | وَضِّ | To reach | يُصلِّ | ورصَلِّ |
| To come, to arrive | يَرِد | ورّدِّ | To happen, to fall | يَقُعُ | و'قَعَ |
| To specify, to describe | يُصِفُ | و'صفْ | To admonish | يَعِظُ | وَعَط |
| To entrust, to authorize | يككِلُ | وكَكَ | To jump | كَثبُ | وَكُبِ |
| To find | يَجِد | وَجَدِ | To inherit | يَرِّ | ورِثِّ |

(• ع -مِيثال)
(يائي)
to despair يُئس



```
()
```



الكلمات الجديدة:


And no bearer of burden will bear the burden of another. (Note: Naff is feminine in Arabic).

$$
\begin{array}{r}
\text { وَلا تَزرُ وَازِرَّ وِزْرَ أخْرى }
\end{array}
$$

(• ع -مِثـال)

The Prophet (saws) prohibited the consumption of every pawed wild animal.


Does one of you approve that he should eat his dead brother's flesh?

Do not be wet, so as to be squeezed, and do not be dry so as to be broken.

Eat and wear what you have and do not lose hope of Allah's bounty.

She (Mary's mother) said, "O my Lord behold I have delivered a female child;" and Allah knew best what she had delivered.

Surely, We inherit the Earth and all there are over it and to Us they will be returned.

So, there is no sin upon them (the women) that they remove their (outer) garments.

(Zakariyyah) said, "O My Lord! Do not leave me single (childless, and uninherited), although You are the best of those who inherit."

And those who join (of the kin) what Allah has commanded that they be joined.


## (• ع - مــال)

Allah is One. He is Unique - He did not give birth, nor was he given birth.

And, surely what you are being promised (about the Day of Judgment) is to prove true, and the Day of Reckoning is to happen.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 11 \\
& \text { يَلْدْ ولَمَ يُولد } \\
& \text { وَاِنَّما تُوعَدُون (عن يوم } \\
& \text { القيامة) لَصَادِقٌ وَإنَّ الدِّينَ } \\
& \text { لَواقِــعٌ (الآية) }
\end{aligned}
$$

And when I have blown in it a Spirit from Me , then fall down to it in prostration.

Indeed Allah has removed (the obligation of) fasts and part of Prayers from the traveler.

وَ وَ إذا نَفَخْتُ فِيهِ مِن رُوحِى فَقَعُوا لَهُ سَاجدِينَ (الآية) 1إن اللّه تَعالى وَضْعَعْن عَن المُسافِر الصَوْمَ وشَطْرَ الصالاةِ

## EXERCISES

## I. Translate the following:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ا. ( يُسئْلُ أهل النار يَوْمَ القِيَامَةِ ) هل وَجدتَ ما وَعَدَ ربُكم حَقِّا (الآية) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { r. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ه. وَذُرُوا ظاهرِّ الإِنْمِ وَبَاطِنَهُ (الآية) } \\
& \text { 7. وقالَ فِرعونُ ذَرُونى أَقْتُلْ موسى (الآية) } \\
& \text { إنْ الأُرضَ يَرَثُها عِبَادِىَ الصَاَلِحَونَ (الآية) .V }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 9. نَحنُ أَعْلُمُ بما يَصِفُونَ (الآية) }
\end{aligned}
$$

(• ع -مِيثال)


## II. Translate the following:

1. It is obligatory on a patient to do as he is told.
2. Describe to me the way to your house.
3. The matter is not clear so do not promise him anything.
4. The girl did not find the lost pen.
5. He was not sermonized and so he was not admonished.
6. The two men joined us in Makkah.
7. That will not be joined which was broken.
8. O woman! Do you find Allah's promise as true?
9. Deeds will be weighed on the day of Judgment.
10. Do not stand there - jump.
```
()
```


## III. Change the past tense verbs to present tense in the following.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (1) وَصَفَ الملدُّ لأحفادِه أيّامَ طفولته } \\
& \text { (Y) ما وزرتْ نفس" وزرَ أخرى }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (0) الولدَ وَجِعَه رأسُه فأحذذ إِجازَةَ يو مٍ } \\
& \text { (7) سألَ زيد أبناءه الصغارَ: أين وَضْعتُم أقالمى؟ } \\
& \text { (V) قال الابُ لابنيهِ: قد وجبَت عَلَيُما الصالَّ لأنكما بَلَغُتما سِنَّ الرُشدِ } \\
& \text { ( ( ( ) } \\
& \text { (9) كيف وَجَدتُنَّ تقاليدَ الباكستانيين؟ } \\
& \text { ( (1 ) ما جُبُنوا وما وهُنُوا ولكن ثبتوا فى وجه العدوٍ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (I r) أ رَأيتَ النساءَ اللاتى وَشَمْنَ رُجُوهَهُنَّ؟ } \\
& \text { ( }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (l V) هل قامت البناتُ من النوم قبل أذان الفجر } \\
& \text { ( ( } 1 \text { ) وَضعتُ كتبى على اللكتب وَخر جتُ من الفصل }
\end{aligned}
$$

```
()
```

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (19) هل قمت من النوم عند اذان الفجر؟ } \\
& \text { (Y•) جاء طالبا الفصل الأوّل إلى المدير فَوَقَفًا بين يديه . } \\
& \text { (Y) ما وَجَلَ الفاجرُ من عذاب اللهُ . }
\end{aligned}
$$

## IV. In the following verses mark the past, present \& imperative and give

 their conjugation.$$
\begin{align*}
& \text { ( (1) وَلا تزرُ وازرةٌ وزرَ أخرى (الآية) } \\
& \text { وَدَّ كثير من اهل الكتاب لو يرُدُوْنَمُم من بعد إِمانكمم كفَارًأ (الآية) } \tag{Y}
\end{align*}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ( ( ) فَهَبْ لى من لدنكَ ولياً يرثُنى ويرث من آل يعقوبَ (الآية) } \\
& \text { (0) لو كان هؤ لاء آلهةُ ما ورَدُوْ ها (الآية) } \\
& \text { (7) وَ زِنُوا بالقــطاسِ المستقيم (الآية) } \\
& \text { (V) مَـْــُهُ على الخر طوم (الآية) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (9) وما كان لِشُر كاءهم فلايُصِلُ الى الله (الآية) } \\
& \text { ( ( ) إذا وقعتِ الو اقعةُ ليسَ لوقعتِها كاذبة (الآية) } \\
& \text { ( ( } 1 \text { ) فأعرض عنهم وعظظهم (الآية) } \\
& \text { ( } 1 \text { ) و قِفُوهُم النَّهم مسئولونَ (الآية) } \\
& \text { ( }
\end{aligned}
$$

V. Write the complete table comprising of ماضي , مضارع , أمر، فهى of the وَزَنَ word

## (Hollow verbs)

## Rules:

This lesson helps you to deal with another set of triliteral verbs that act tough on you because of the presence of a , or a ي . In this class they occur as the central radical of the root verb.
أَخْوَفُ occur as the middle radical or known as verbs in which a or or (hollow).
Once again, of them there are two kinds: (i) أجوفُ واوي where the central radical is a , and (ii) أجوفُ يائي where the middle radical/consonant/letter is a ي.

Herewith we shall deal with أجوفُ واوي alone.
There is an added - but, rest assured, minor - difficulty with this class of verbs. The middle radical does not appear as a , or in the maadi construction. But rather, as an alif. The alif in this case represents either a g or a s.
Now, how to know which of the two? Well, there are several ways. Look into a good dictionary. It will state the mudaare after the maadi form. For, the alif of mahdi becomes either ag or a in mudaare'.
So, in a good dictionary (which are not so much in demand), you will find the


Some dictionaries save space by entering a , or a after stating the qadi, to indicate the real radical hidden behind the alif:
Yet other dictionaries indicate by adding a damma - (above a little dash-line) or a kassa - (below a little dash line) where the dammah stands for $g$ and kara for ي
Obviously, there are dictionaries that give you no clue whatsoever. Let us push them out of the market by not buying them.
You can also guess whether the calif of the qadi in ajwaf is a , or a by studying the context to see how it is altered in mudaare..
The tables below explain the rest.

> ( (1-أَوْفُ واوي)

قال: He said

 لِي، لَنَا

المُشارع الجهول: يَتُولُ / يُقَالُ لَُ، لَهُما، لَهُم، لَها، لَهُنَّ، لَكَ، لَكِ، كَكُما، لَكُم، كَكُنَّ، لِي، نَا
（أَأَبْوْفُ واوي）

كان：He was

| \％ | ¢ | ¢ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0，بك， | ¢ | US |
| 退 |  | Stis |
| Sit | S | S |
| L， $5 \cdot 1$ | Six | Lis |
| ！ | كا | كr |
| \％ | نك | $\because$ |
|  | Stir | W |
| 10， | ¢ | ＋ |
| \％ | \％ | \％ |
| Lisit | تك， | L： |
| Sit | \％ | 仿 |
| Sild | － | ： |
| Sif | S | 碞 |

البجهول of used كان：
(1 ع-أَجْوّفُ واوي)

A few commonly used words:


Allah was (there) (when) there was nothing.

When you speak, speak the truth.
The people say, "the moon has appeared" but the Muslims did not fast.

Returned the returning (person) to sin and did not repent.

Taste this food, it is said to be the best food for the hungry.

الأمثلة
ا كَانَ اللّه ولَمْ يَكُنْ شيء (الـديث)
r إذا قُلْتَ فاصْدُقْ r يَقُولُ الناس إنَّ القَمَر قَدْ طَلَعَ ولَكِنً المُسْلِمينَ لَمْ يَصُومُوْ ع عَادَ العَائِلُ إلى الذنب ولَمْ يُتُبْ ه ذُقْ هذا الطَعامَ لأنه قيل أَنَّه مِن أَحْسْنِ الطُعامِ للجائع

Verily, Allah does not sleep and it is not for Him to sleep, for He circumscribes everything with His knowledge and drives time to its end.

The Prophet (ass) said to him who fasted during the day and prayed the whole night: Eat and fast, sleep and stand. (ie., stand in prayers).

And Fir' awn said, "Let me alone so that I kill Muse and let him call upon his Lord".

When you are in Makkah for
'Umrah, then know that when you enter the Holy House, then, supererogatory Prayers are not lawful at the time of entry - unless you find the congregation in an Obligatory Prayer - but rather, first circumambulate the House seven times and then stand near Ibrahim's Station for supererogatory Prayer.

Then said, (Muss's sister to Fir'awn's wife), should I lead you to a household that will take him take into custody for you?

When one of you sneezes, let him say, "Praise to Allah." And let (the one who hears him) say, "May Allah show you mercy." Then, let (the first one) reply to say, "May Allah forgive us and you." (As it has come in the hadith).
I إن اللّهَ لا يَنامُ ولَمْ يَكُنْ لَهُ أَنْ يَنامَ
لأَنَه يَسَعُ كُلْ شَيء بِعِلْمِه ويَسُوقُ
الزَّمَانَ إِلَ نِهايَتِهِ
v
كان يَصُوُمُ ين النهار ويَقُومُ بِلصّالاةِ
في الليلِ كُلُها: كُلْ وصُمْ، نَمْ وقُمْ
( يعني قم للصالةٍ )
^ وقَال فِرعَون ذَرُونِي أَقْتُل مُوسى
أو لِيَدْ عُ ربَّه (الآية)
إذا كُنَتَ فِي مكُةَ لِلعُمرَةِ فاعلَمْ انَّه
و إذا دَخَلْتَ البَيْتَ الحَرامَ فلا يجوزُ
لك الصَّاةُ الَنَفِلَةُ عِندَ الدُّخولِّ،
إِلاُ أَن تَجِدِ البِماعةَ في الصَّلاةِ
الَّفُرُوَّهِ, وَلكِنْ أَوَّا طُفْ بالبَيتِ

لِصَالِةِ النَّافِلَةِ
فَقَالت (أُختُ موسى لإِمرأةِ
فِرعون) هَل أُدُلُّكُم عَلى أَملِ بَيْتِ
يَكْفُونُهُ لَكُم (الآية)
إذاء
ولْيَقُلْ له السَّامِعُ يَر حَمُك اللَّهُ
فلُيُحبْ (العاطس) واليَقُل يَغْفِر اللَّهُ
كَنا وَلكُم (كما ورَّدَ في المديث)

الكلمات الجلديدة:

To take care of, to sponsor

Place
Soul, person
Supererogatory
Whale


Those of great resolution

أولوا العزَّم

مُقّام

Ka'bah/the Holy
House
To leave, abandon

ذر (ماضي: وذر)
Lesser or minor pilgrimage


To be incapable,


حُوت
to lack strength
Crow

عَجِزَ


## EXERCISES

 verbs:

(1 \&-أَبْرْفُ واوي)

## II. Translate the following:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ا. ( فِيلَ لِلبني صـ ) فَاصبرْ كَما صبرَ أولُوا الْزَزْ مِنَ الرُسُلِ وَلاَ تَكُنْ } \\
& \text { كَصَاحِب الحُوتِ (الآية) }
\end{aligned}
$$

r. (يقول عيسى يُومُ القِيامةِ ) مَا قُلتُ لَهُم إلأَّ مَا أمرتُنِي بهِ أَنِ اعْبُدُوا اللّهَ (الآية) r. ع . وما كان لِنفسِ أَنْ تَوتَ إلاُ بِإذْنِ اللّه (الآية) ه . وما كان لِمُؤمِن أَنْ يَقْتُ مؤمناً (الآية) 7. أَعَجزْتُ أَنْ أكونَ مِثْلَ هذا الغُراب؟؟ (الآية)
V. وَإذ قُلتُم (يا بين إسرائيل): يا موسى لن نَصْبِر على طعامٍ واحلٍ (الآية) ^. لا تَخُن مَن خحانَكَ (المديث) 9. اللَهمَمَ إنّي أعوذُ بِك مِن قَلْبٍ لا يَخْشْغُ ومِن دُعاء لا يُسْمَعُ ومِن نَفْسٍ لا تَشْبُعُ ومِن عِلمِ لا يَنْفُعُ (الحديث) - ا. اللّهمَ إنَي أعوذُ بُك مِن العَجْز والحَّلْ والجُبْنِ والبُخْلِ والهَرَمِ وأعوذُ بِك مِن عَذاب القَبرِ وأعوذُ بِك مِن عَذاب النّارِ وأعوذُ بِك مِن فِتْنِة الَححيا والمماتِ
(الحديث)


## III Translate the following:

1. Be truthful O people, and do not be liars.
2. He who deceived us is not of us.
3. O woman! What have you to say about this affair?
4. Said one of the speakers, "It is said that what was already read was stolen."
(1 ـَأَجْفُقُ واوي)
5. The Prophet has said: "Do not fast specifically (خاصة) on Fridays.
6. The Prophet told the man who was always fasting: "Fast but also eat and stand up for prayers but also sleep."
7. The criminals will be driven to fire and will be told: "Taste the punishment now."
8. When you repent, do not return to the sin.
9. May Allah lengthen your life and may you not die before you have been forgiven.
10. They seek Allah's refuge that they should die when alone.

## IV. Translate the following:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \text { زار إخوتي حديقة الحيوانات في عطلة آخر الاسبوع }  \tag{1}\\
& \text { إنْ مؤُ لاء قد عادو ا إلى وطنهم بعد غياب طويلٍ }  \tag{Y}\\
& \text { عادت الطيورُ إلى اعشاشها قَبلَ غروب الشمس } \\
& \text { مشى الجمدل في الصحراء أياماً عديدةً بالا ماء أو عَلَفٍ }  \tag{६}\\
& \text { أ زُرتِ الأهرامَ أثناءَ أقامتكِ كصرَ ؟ }  \tag{0}\\
& \text { إنين ما غبتُ من المدرسة إلا يومأ واحدأ }  \tag{7}\\
& \text { هل تُبُنَّ إلى الله أيتها النساءُ؟ }  \tag{V}\\
& \text { دخلتُ الـسجد الحرام وطُفتُ بالكعبة }  \tag{^}\\
& \text { أ ما عدتُ أخاكم المريضُ؟ }  \tag{9}\\
& \text { هؤ لاء الفتياتُ خِطنَ ملابسهن بأنفـهـن } \\
& \text { ما دخل الرِّقُ في شيء إلاّ زانه وما دخل العُنفُ في شيء إلا شانَه (المديث) }  \tag{11}\\
& \text { عذنا بالله من وساوس الشيطانِ }  \tag{1Y}\\
& \text { لقد غاضت مياه الافهار رِقلًّة المطر }  \tag{1r}\\
& \text { طار قبي فَرَحاُ عندما سععتُ نتيجة الامتحان } \\
& \text { اذا ممعوا القرآنَ فاضت أعيُُهم من الدمع } \tag{10}
\end{align*}
$$


V. In the following verses mark hollow verbs and indicate their measure \& conjugation form:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \text { فسيحوا في الأرض أربعة أشهرٍ (الآية) }  \tag{1}\\
& \text { قُوموا لله قانْتِينَ (الآية) } \tag{}
\end{align*}
$$

سِيرُوا فيها ليالي وأياماً آمِنينَ (الآية)
فجاسوا خلال الديار (الآية)

عسى ربُّكم أن ير حمكمُ وَ إِن عُدتُم عُدنا (الآَية)

فَفَرَت منكم لَمَّا خِفتُكمُ (الآية)

فلا تلوموني وَلوموا أنفُـَكُم (الآية)
( إنَّما أمرُه إذا أرادَ شيئاً أن يقولَ كَه كُن فَيَكُونُ (الآية)

> ( ( Y Y (الذين يبيتون لِربِّهم سُجَّداً وَّقياماً (الآية)
> ( ( I (
(l ( ) يطُوفُونَ بينها وبينَ حِمِم آن (الآية)
(l00) (أيها الذين آمنوا توبوا إلى اللهُ توبةً نَّصوحاً (الآية)
( ( ) Y يوم يقُومُ الناسُ لرُبِّ العالَمِينَ (الآية)
(IV) فأمّا الذين في قلوبهـم مرض فزادَهـم رِجساً إلى رِحسهـم وماتوا وُهـم كافِرُونَ (الآية)

أجوف يائي
Note:
In view of the explanations offered for the previous lesson, the following should be easy to follow:

بَاعَ: He sold


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (r) أـجوف يائي) } \\
& \text { الماضي الجهول: :بــيــعَ: لـ / لما / لك / لكم / لكن / لنا ــ } \\
& \text { المضارع الجهول: يُــبـــــُ }
\end{aligned}
$$

## Other words of the same class:

| To fly | طار | To declare defective | عاب | To move, run, travel | س |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| To be angry | غاظ | To become | صار | To shout | صاح |
| To borrow, to take a religion | دان | To spend the night | بَاتِ | To increase | زاد |
| To incline | ل | To disappear | غاب | To make well, to become good | زان |
|  |  |  |  | To lose | ضاع |


| النهى | الأمر | المضار ع | الماضي |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| He walked |  | يسير' | سَارِ |
|  |  | يَسِيرَانِ | سَارًا |
|  |  | 'يسيرونِ | سَارُوا |
|  |  | تَسير | سَارْتْ |
|  |  | تَسِرَانِ | سَارِّار |
|  |  | يَسِرْنِ | سِرْنَ |
| لا تَسِرْ | سرِ | تَسِيرُ | سرِّتِ |
| لا تسير「 | سِيرِ | تُسِيرّانِّ | سِرْتِمَا |
| لا لَسِيرُوا | /10يروا | تَسِيرونِّ | سرِّمٌ |
| لا تَسِرِي | سِيرِي | تَسِرِينَ | مرِّتِ |

(؟ Y -أجوف ياني)


To achieve: نال - ينال

# الكلمات الجديدة: 



The rooster crowed and the world of the rooster crowed with it.


Yَمَ أَكُن أنا الدِّيك لأَصيحَ عليك
طُولَ النهار
(er -أجوف يائي)

Go where you like and fly to where you will, but spend the night with us.

The Prophet (saws) used to say: "O my Lord increase me in knowledge." But today the people say: "O our Lord increase our wealth." They do not get angry except for wealth and nothing increases in their lives except greediness.

I was not absent except for two weeks but the people assumed I was dead.

Abu Bakr used to sell cloth before assuming caliphate.

Have they not traveled about in the land to see how was the end of those who were before them?
(Muss said to Pharaoh), "So I escaped from you when I feared you. Then Allah gave me Wisdom."

The most regretful of the people on the Day of Judgment will be a man who sold his religion for the world of another.
وَلِكِن بِتْ أيْمَا تَسِدرُ وطِرْ أينما تَطيرُ
ع كان البنى (ص) يَقولُ: ربِّ
زِدن عِلماً ولكنَّ الناس اليوم
يَقُولونَ ويَدْعُونَ : ربَّنا زِدنا

## كان أبو بكر يَبِعُ القُقَاشَ قَبلَ

 المِلافِةِv أْفَمْ يَسِيرُوا في الأرضِ فَيْظُظُروا
كيف كان عاقِقَةُ الذِذِنَ مِن قَبِلِهم
( (

Allah is with the debtor until he pays 1 إن اللّهَ تَعالى مَعْ الدائن حتى off his debt, so long as the debt is not in (something) that Allah disapproves of.

(

## EXERCISES

## I. Translate the following:


r. r.

ع. وَتر كنَا فِيها آيةً بِلَّـــذينَ يَخافونَ عَذَابَ الاخرَّهِ (الآية)
ه. إنٍّي أَخافُ عَلَعُم عَذابَ يَومُ أَلِمٍ (الآية)
T. فَلَمًا جَاءْهُ ( أي موسى إلى شُعَيبِ) وَقَصَّعَلَيهِ القَصَصَ قَال لا

تَخْفْ (الآية)
(قالَ اللُّ) يا موسى لا تَف إِنِّي لا يَخافُ لَدَىًّ المُرسَلونَ (الآية) .V
^. . .
9. وما من غائبٍة في السماء ولا في الأرض إلا ( ذِكرُها ) في كتاب
(الآية)

- ا. وقُلْ رَبِّ زِدْنِي عِلْماً (الآية)
l ا 1 وإذ قيل لهم ( أي لبنى إسرائيل ) اسكنوا هذه القرية و كلوا منها يا آدم اسكن أَنت وزوجكك الجنة فكال منها (الآية)

(ץ § -أحوف يائي)


## II Translate the following:

1. The books you sold yesterday have been bought again today.
2. The man spent half the night shouting at his wife.
3. He opened the cage and said to the bird: fly.
4. The man brought the goats but sold the ropes and disappeared.
5. You (better) disappear or your father will shout at you.
6. I did not disappear، but because I feared.
7. Do not incline towards evil or you will lose the way.
III. Translate the following:

> أحسن القصص-7

وَكَانَ يُوسُفُ يَعْلَمُ أنْ الأَمَانَةَ قَلِيلَةِ فِي النَّاسِ
وُكَانَ يُوسُفُ يُعْلَمُ أَنْ الْخِيَانَةَ كَثِيرَةِ في النَّاسِ




وَتُلْبُ بُيو تُهُمْ وَلاَ يَجِدُ النَّاسُ مَا يَلْبْسُونَ.

وَّنْ كَانَ حَفِيظًا وَمَا كَانَ عَلِيمًا لاَ يَعْلُمُ أَيْنَ خَزَائِنُ الأَرْضِ وَكَيْفَ يْنَفِعُ بِهَا. وَمْنْ كَانَ عَلِيمًا وَمَا كَانَ حَفيظاً يَأْكُلُ مِنْهَا وَيَخُونُ فِيهًا وَكَانَ يُوسُفُ حَفِيظًا عَلِيمًا.




## The Best of Stories-6

## 16. In charge of the treasures of the land

And Yusuf knew that there is little trust in the people
And Yusuf knew that dishonesty is wide-spread among the people
Yusuf could see that the people act dishonestly in Allah's property
He could see that there were plenty of treasures in the land, but wasted away
They were being wasted away because the rulers do not fear Allah in their regard
So that, their dogs eat while the people do not find what they can eat
Their houses are draped while the people do not find what they can wear
He will not benefit the people with the treasures of the earth unless he is a (good) keeper, knowledgeable"
And, he who is a (good) keeper, but not knowledgeable, does not know where are the earth's treasures, and how to benefit from them
While he who is knowledgeable, but not a (good) keeper, will devour out of it and be dishonest therewith, but Yusuf was a (good) keeper as also knowledgeable
Yusuf did not wish to leave the rulers devouring the people's wealth
Yusuf could not bear to see the people starving and dying
And Yusuf was not shy of the truth
So he said to the king, "Place me upon the earth's treasures. Indeed I am a (good) keeper, knowledgeable
That is how Yusuf became in charge of the Egyptian treasures
The people felt greatly relieved and thanked Allah.
(Complete the rest)
(ז ז -أجوف يائي)

## - IV

وَكَانَ في مِرْ وَالشَّامِ مَجَاعَةٌ كَمَا أَخْبِر يُو سُفُ
 كَريُكا، وْهُوْ عَلَى خَزَائِنِ الأَرْضِ







وُكَيْفَ لاَ يَمُوتُ وَقَدْ كَانَ في الْبُرِّرِ. كَانَ في الْبُبُرِ وَكانَتِ الْبْرُ عُمِيقَةُ







## ^ 1 - بين يوسف وإخوته

رَكَلُمهُمْ يُو سُفُ وَقَالَ لَهُمْ: مِنْ أَيْنَ أَنْتُمْ قَاُلُوا: مِنْ كَنْعَانًا
قَالَ: مَنْ أَبُو كُمْهُ قَالُوا: يَعْقُوبُ بْنُ إِنْحَاقَ بْنِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ (عَلَيْهِمُ الصَّلَّوَاتُ وَالسَّاَمُ). قَالَ: هَلْ لَكُمْ أَخْ اَخَرُرُ
قَالُوا: نَعَمْ كَنَا أَخْ اسْمُهُ بِنْيامِينُ!
قَالً: لِمَاذَا لمَ يأتِ مَعْكُمْْ




يُو سُفَ عِنْدَ مَتَاعِنَا فَأَكَلَّهُ اللّْئُبْ.

وَاشْتَاقَ يُوسُفُ إِلَى أَخْيِيهِ بِنْامِينَن


فَأَمَرَ لَهُمْ يُوْ سُفُ بُ بالطُعَامِم
 وَلَا تَجِدُونَ طَعَامُا إِذَا لَمْ تَأُوْا بِهِ. وَأَمَرَ يُوسُفُ بِمَالِهِمْ فَوُضِعَ في مَتَاعِهِمْ (من الكتاب: قَصَصُ الَقِّنِ - لأبي الحسن علي الندوي - البزء الأول، مع تصريف بسيط)
(६ \& -أجوف يائي)

|  | مَعالينِ الكَلِماتِ البَلديلدِ: |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| spoke to them | كَلْمَهُمْ | hunger/starvation | مَجْاعَةٌ |
| peace and blessings | الصَّلوَاتِ | informed | أَأخبرِ |
| eager | اشْتَاقِ | turned towards | توَجِّهِهِ |
| test | يَمْتُحِنِ | unrecognizing | مُنْكِرْنِ |
| humiliate them | يَغْغَحْرُمْ | Could not to recognize them | أَنْكَرْمُمْ |



## Rules:

Now we have before us another class of verbs, which, once again, are no different in grammatical rules and applications from other verbs, except that their triliteral root has a , or a in them, which fall at the end: that is, the third radical of the root verb.
In truth we do not need a lesson on them but for the assumption, on the part of the students, that these are difficult to handle. There might be some truth in it, but, in actual fact, they are not so complicated.
They are known as الأنعال الناقصة, and, once again, there are two kinds of them, the واوي and the .We deal with the latter in the next lesson.

Once again, in the tri-literal root, the , does not appear as the third radical in the root verb in the maadi form, but is represented by an alif. However, this rule applies to the verb in the root alone. Once you start looking into other forms within the maadi table, the I gladly changes to $و$.For example, دعا (he called) becomes in the dual دعرا (the two called). The , is visibly present here, as it is present in every one of the rest of the 13 forms that a root can take in maadi. Arabic is a language which adheres to its rules like, as the common people say, nobody's business. But here is a cliché. Try making majhool out of دعا . It is hard. So, the perennial principle in Arabic language comes to rescue: follow common sense, and do not insist people to twist their tongues. Hence, instead of making majhool of دُعِير as a bit difficult to pronounce), they altered it to دُعبيُ . Here, the represents the , Look up the majhool table below for a fuller understanding. This principle of requesting "Yaa's" assistance is resorted to at several places in the various structures built over the triliteral root of the أجوف واوي class though not consistently always.

To invite, to call, to supplicate : دعا

| اسم المفعل | اسم الفاعل | المضارع | الماضى |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| مَدْعُـــوٌ | $\varepsilon^{\text {2 }}$ | يَدْعُو | دَعَا |
|  |  | يَكعُوانِ | دَعَــــوا |
|  |  | يَدْعُون | دَعَــــوْ10 |
| مَدعُـــوّة، | داعيةّ | تَكْعْوْ | دَعَــــنْ |
|  |  | تَدْعوانِ |  |
| النهي | الأمر | يَدْعُـــونِّ | دَعَوْنْ |
| لا تَدْ | اُدْعُ | تلعو | دَعْوْتَ |
| لا تَدعُـــوا |  | تَكُعــــوّانِ | دعوتما |
| لا تَدعُـــوْا | اُدْعُـــوْا | تدعون | دعوتج |
| لا تَدْعِى | اُدْعِّى | تدعــــــــنـ | دُعَوْتِ |
|  |  | تَدعُـــوْانِ | دعوتما |
|  |  | Fَّدعــون | دعوتُـــنّ |
|  |  | أُدعُـــو | دعوت |
|  |  | نَكْعو1 | دَعَوْنا |


| المبكلم | الملكفرد | المؤنث <br> المخاطب | المؤنث <br> الغائب | الغائب الجمع | الغائب المفرد |  | البجول |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| دُعِيْنًا | دُعِيْتُ | دُعِيْتِ | دُعِيَتْ | دُعُوا | ذُعِى | الماضى |  |
| نُدعَى | اُدعَى | تُدْعِينَ | تُلْعى | يُدْعَونِ | يُدْعَى | المضارع |  |

(r \& -الثًاتــصْ - واوي)

Some other words of this kind:

|  | الفعول | الفاعل | النهى | الأمر | المضارع | الماضي |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| To escape | مُنجوٌ | نَاج |  |  | كَنْجُو | نَجْا |
| To forgive, | معفوٌ | عَاف |  | اُعْفُ | كَعْفُو | عَفا |
| To forget |  | ساهٍ |  |  | يَسْهُو | سٌا |
| To come near |  | دَانٍ | لاتدن | اُدنُ | يَدْنُو | دُنا |
| To rise, to be high |  | عال |  |  | يَعْلُو | عَلا |
| To appear |  | بادٍ |  |  | يَبْدُو | بَدِ |
| To antagonize/run |  | عادٍ |  |  | يعلو | عد |
| To recite, to follow | مُتلوّ | تال |  | 'آتْرُ | يتلو | تلا |
| To wipe off, to rub |  | $7^{\text {L }}$ | لاتمُ | 'امحُ | . | ع |
| To be empty |  | خال |  |  | يخلو | V |
| To become expensiv exceed the proper b |  | غالٍ |  |  | يغلو | غلا |
| To complain | مشكرك | شاك |  |  | يَشْهكو | شَ |
| To hope for | مرجوٌ | رإِ |  |  | يرجو | رجا |
| To carry out a military expedition |  | غازٍ |  |  | يغزو | غزا |

الكلمات الجلديدة:

Harm,
misfortune
What is it with me?
Escape (from something)
\&
ضُرُ Mean, lowly
ما لي To through
نجاةٌ Way, path

خحسيس
رُمى سْبيل
(

Never shall succeed he who lies.
الأمثلة:
الأمثلة:
كَ r
ولا يَميلُ عنه إذالبِبل مال
ويَدعو للخَير إذا دَعا
ويَرمي في سْبيلِ اللّه إذا رُمى
r
كلمة "دنا" يعنى شئٌ قريبٌ وقيل
أيضاُ أَهَا مأخو ذةٌ من "دَنِئ" يعنى
شئٌ حــــٌ أو غير طيب
を
تِلْمِذْ غَير ناجِ
• هل دنا مِنكِ من دعوت؟
I لا تَدعو الأصْنامَ وتَرْجُوُ مِن اللَّهِ
كَواباً
لَمَا غَلَت الأسعارُ في المَدِينَةِ شكا
الناسُ إلى رسول اللّه (ص) فقال إنى
أَرجُو أن لا أظلِمُ على أحَدٍ - أو كما
قال
، أُدعوا 1
ولا تَعلوا على الناسِ، فإنه مِن يَعلو
عليهم فلا يَنْجو لأَن اللّه غَيرُ ساهٍ ولا

Abu Bakr spoke the truth when he spoke, would not incline away from it even if the mountain inclined, invited to good whenever he invited, and shot in the way of Allah whenever he shot.

It is said that the word "Duniya" is derived from "danaa" meaning a thing close at hand. It is also said that it is derived from "dani" meaning a lowly or not a good thing.

Have you erased what I recited unto you? It seems you are a student who is not going to succeed.
Did he whom you (O woman) invited, come near you?

Do not supplicate the idols and hope for reward from Allah.

When the prices rose up in Madinah and the people complained to the Prophet he said, I hope not to wrong anyone. Or he said similar words.

Call upon Allah and do not call upon other than Him, anyone. And do not oppress the people. He who oppressed the people will not succeed. For Allah is neither not succeed. For Allah is neither
forgetful nor forgiving of the from it even if the mountain - forma from.
oppression.

Say, "I have been forbidden that I should worship those that you call upon apart from Allah."
And O my people! What's with me that I call you to escape (from punishment) while you call me to the Fire.
How can you disbelieve (in Allah), while you (are the ones to whom) Allah's verses are recited?

When (one of) your companion dies, spare him, and do not indulge in him.

## EXERCISES

## I. Translate the following:

ا. قال نوح (ع) ربٍ إِنٍى دَعْوُتُ قَــومِى لَيْاًُ وَنَهَاراً (day) - (الآية)


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { r. وَ وإذا مَسَّ (touch) النَّاسَ ضُرٌ (evil) دَعَوْا ربَّهُمْ } \\
& \text { ع. قُــلْ هَذْهِ سببيْلِلى أَدْعُوا إلَى اللّهِ (الآية) } \\
& \text { ه. وَلاَ تَدْعُ مِن دُونِ اللَهِ مَالا يَنْعُكُ وعَّ ولا يَضُرُك (الآية) }
\end{aligned}
$$

7. قَال ( شُعيب لموسى ) لا تَخَفْْ - نَجَوتَ مِن القَومِ الظُّالِمِينَ (الآية) (أَىْ، بعد عبادة البقرة) لَعَلَكُم (in the hope that) تَشْكُرُون (الآية)
^. ^. وهو الذى يَقْبَلُ التَوبَةَ (repentance) عَن عِبَادِهِ ويَعْفُو عَن كتيرٍ (الآية)
(ـ

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 9. فَاعْفُ عَنَّا واغْفِرلنا وَارْحَمنا (الآية) } \\
& \text { • ا . قِيلَ للكُفارِ يَومَ القيامةِ) أَلَم تَكُنْ آياتى تُتْلى عَلْيُمُ (الآية) } \\
& \text { (1) وَاتْلُ عَلَيهِمْ نَبَأَ إبراهِيمَم (الآية) }
\end{aligned}
$$

## II. Translate the following:

1. Read the Qur'an morning and evening and pray to Allah that He erases your sins.
2. It appears to me that the prices have gone up.
3. When people forget, forgive them.
4. Whoever antagonized people, will not escape punishment.
5. Whenever the companions were called, they responded.
6. Call to your Lord's way with wisdom.
7. A young man went to the Prophet and sought permission for fornication. He told him, "Come closer."

III Write the complete table ماضى/مضارع/أمروفى of the word نَجى

## IV. Translate the following:

> V-أحسن القصص
> 19 - 9
 أَزْ

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { وَطَلَبُوا مِنْ يَعْقُوبَ بْنَيَامِنَ وَقَالُوا: "إِنَّا لَهُ لَحَافِظُونَ." }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { هَلْ نَسيتُمْ قِصَّةَ يُو سُفِّ؟ } \\
& \text { أَ تَحْفَظُوُ نَ بِنيامِينَ كَماَ حَفِظْتُمْ يُو سُفْ } \\
& \text { "اللهُ خَيْرٌ حَافِظًا وَهُوْ أَرْحَمُ الرَّاحِمِينَ." }
\end{aligned}
$$

وَوْجَدُوا مَالَهُمْ في مَتَاعِهِمْ فَقَالُوا لأَبَيْهِمْ: إِنُّ الْعَيِزَ رَجُلْ كَرِيُ, قَدْ رَدَّ مَالَنَا وَكَمْ يَأْشُذْ مِنَّا ثَمْنُا.


## The Best of Stories-7

## 19. Between Ya`qub and his sons

They returned to their father and informed him of the news and said to him: "Send our brother with us, or, we might not find any good with the exchequer." They requested from Ya`qub BinYameen saying, "We shall be his protectors." Ya`qub said, "Shall I believe in you about him as I believed in you about his brother, earlier?"
"Have you forgotten Yusuf's story?
Will you protect BinYameen as you protected Yusuf?"
"Allah is the (true) Protector and He is the Most Kind of those who show kindness."
And they found their money in their goods and so told their father, "Surely, the exchequer is a generous man. He has returned us our money and has not taken the price from us.
Send with us BinYameen, we shall obtain his due also."
Ya'qub said to them, "I shall never send him with you unless you give the covenant that you will protect him unless you are overpowered in your affair."
So they gave the covenant to Allah and Ya`qub said, "Allah is custodian over what we say." And Ya`qub said to his sons, "O my sons. Do not enter by one door but rather enter by several doors."
(Complete the rest).

(
















 يَنْضَبْ وُكَانَ يُوسُفُ كَرِيُا حَكِيمًا.


 زَمْنٍ طَوِيلٍ لاَ يَرَى أَحَدَا مِنْ أَمْلِهِ.
(r \& -النَاتــصُ - واوي)

وَقَذْ سَاقَ اللهُ إلِيهِ بِنْيَامِنَ، أَ فَاْ يَحْبُسُهُ عِنْدَهُ، يَرَاهُ رُيكَلِّمُهُ
 أَبَدًا! أَبَبُّا
(من الكتاب: قَصَصُ النبِيّين - لأ بي الحسن علي الندوي - المَءء الأول, مع تصريف بسيط)

مَعالي الكَلِماتِ ابلَديدةِ:

(الفعل) الناقصُ - (يائى)

## Rules:

This class of verbs - after you have been through with the previous lesson offers little difficulty.
There are no complications whatsoever as this powerful syllable (ي) needs no assistance from ,
As you study the additional words listed in the table below, showing maadi and mudaare', you might notice that the second radical of the root in maadi, does not follow any specific rule in its harakah in the mudaare (although, honestly, there are rules involved). Thus sometimes the second radical has a fat-haa, while at other times a kasrah, while in mudaare', with there being, seemingly, no relationship between what it had in the maadi, almost any harakah. So that, a kasrah of maadi becomes a fat-haa in mudaare" (e.g. رَضبيَ / يرضي ) or, a fathaa of maadi becomes a kasrah in mudaare` (such as in سَقْي / يسقِي ).
Once again, you depend on dictionaries to know what the rule is for a particular verb.
Otherwise, all is fine with this class of words!
(६)

( ع ع -الناقص-ياني)

رُخِيَ He was made to feel satisfied

| الكتلم الجمع | التكلم مفرد | المؤنث <br> المخاطب | المؤنث <br> الغائب | الغائب الجمع | الغائب المفرد |  | الجهول |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| رُضِيْنا | رُضِّتُ | رُضِيْتِ | رُضِيْ | رُضوا | رُضِّ | الماضى |  |
| 'نُرضى | أرضى | تُرْى | تُرضى | يُرْونِّ | يُرضى | المضار ع |  |

## Other words of the same class:

|  | الفعول | الفاعل | النهى | الأمر | المضارع | الماضى |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| To give or supply a drink | مَسُوقٌ | سَا | لا تَسْقِ | إسْقِ | يِسْقِي | سِقى |
| To forget | مَنْسِيٌّ | ناسٍ | لا تَنْسَ | إنسَ | يُنسىى | نَسِيَ |
| To build | مَبْنَيٌّ | بانٍ |  | ابنِ | يَبْنِي | بَّى |
| To leave, to pass |  | ماضٍ |  |  | كِضي | مُضْى |
| To fear |  |  |  |  | يَخْشَىْ | خشبي |
| To hasten |  | سا |  |  | يَسْعَى | سِعَى |
| To lead, to guide |  | هادٍ |  |  | يَهْلِي | هُدْى |
| To be enough, to be sufficient |  |  |  |  | يَكْفي | كفَى |
| To run, to flow |  |  |  |  | يَجْرِي | جر' |
| To forbid |  |  |  |  | يَنْهُى | نَهْىَ |
| To intend |  | ناو |  |  | يَنْوِى | نو'ى |
| To hide |  |  |  |  | يَخْفَى | خخِيِ |
| To meet, to encounter |  |  |  |  | يَلْقَى | لُقِيْ |



الأمثلة:

And they were guided to a good word.

When you (O Mohammad) threw (a handful of pebbles), it was not you but Allah who threw.

Do you order the people right conduct while you forget yourselves?

And Pharaoh said: O Haman! Build me a tall building.

Your fathers and your offspring: you do not know which of them are

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ا ومُدُوا إلى الطِّبِ من القول } \\
& \text { (الآية) } \\
& \text { ومُدُوا إلى الطِيِبَ من القول } \\
& \text { r وَمَا رَمَيتَ إذ رمَّتْتَ وَلكِنَّ اللَّه } \\
& \text { رُّى (الآية) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أُنُفُسْكُم (الآية) } \\
& \text { ₹ عقال فرعون يا هامانُ إِبِ لِى } \\
& \text { صرْحاً (الآية) } \\
& \text { i }
\end{aligned}
$$

( ₹ ₹ -الناتص-ياني)
nearest to you in benefit.

In them (in the two gardens in heaven) are two springs, flowing.

Are you afraid of people, whereas Allah deserves that you fear Him.

Shoot O children of Isma`il because your father (i.e. Ismail) was a shooter (i.e. he used to shoot arrows for hunting).

Those who slander chaste, innocent, believing women, are cursed in this life and the hereafter.

Let there be among you a group of people, inviting to all that is good, commanding what is right and forbidding what is wrong.

Allah (swt) will ask the inhabitants of Heaven: "O inhabitants of Paradise." They will reply, "Here we are O our Lord, glory to You, and all Good is in Your hand." He will ask: "Are you satisfied?" They will reply, "Why should we not be satisfied?"

But (even) if you approve of them, Allah does not approve of a corrupt people.
أَقْرَبُ إلَْْكُم نَفْعُا (الآية)
1 فِيهما (أى في الجمنتن) عَينانِ
تَجْرِيانِ (الآية)
وتَخْشْى الناسَ - واللّه أَحقُق أَن
تَخْثـاه (الآية)
1
( يَعني إسماعيل ) كان رَامياً

الغَافِالتِ المُؤْمِناتِ لُعِنُوا في الدُّنيا وَالآخرِرةِ (الآية)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. } \\
& \text { المخير ويأمرونَ بالمَعْرُوفِ ويَنْهُونَ } \\
& \text { عَنِ الُُْكِرِ (الآية) } \\
& \text { I } 1 \text { إن اللَّهَ تعالى يَقُوِلُ لأهلِ الجَنَةٍ: } \\
& \text { يا أهلَ المَنَةِ فَيَقُولُونَ: لبَيْكَ ربَّنا } \\
& \text { وسَعْدَيك، والحَيْرُ في يَدَيْك } \\
& \text { فَيَقول: هَل رَضِيْتَمْ فَيَقُولُونَ: ما } \\
& \text { لَنا لا نَرْضَى؟ (المديث) } \\
& \text { فإنْ } \\
& \text { يَرضى عَنِ الْقَومِ الفَاسِقِينَ }
\end{aligned}
$$

(६ £ -الناتص-يائي)

Then, if two men are not there (as witness), then a man and two women (will do) of those that you approve as witnesses.

Say, "I am afraid - if I disobey my Lord - of the punishment on a Great Day."

And I do not know (said the Prophet) what will be done to me or to you on the Day of Judgment.

When Allah decrees for a slave that he should die in a land, He sets for him a need in it (so that he goes there to meet his death).

فَإِنْ لَمْ يكونا رَجُلين فَرَجلِ وامر أتانِ مِمَنْ تَرْضْونَ مِنَ

الثـهداء (الآية)
\& ربّى عَذَابَ يومٍ عظيمٍ (الآية)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { و وما أَدْرى ما يُفْعَلُ بِ وَلا بِكُمْ } \\
& \text { (أي، يُوم القِيَامَةِ) - (الـديث) } \\
& \text { إذا قَضَى اللَّهُ تعالى لِعَبْدٍ أَن } \\
& \text { يَمُوتَ بِأَرض جَعَلَ لَه إِليها } \\
& \text { حاجَةٍ (الحديث) }
\end{aligned}
$$


( ع ع -الناقص-يائي)

Angel
Evil
Hardship
To be exhausted River

| مَلَكٌ | Pure (of $\sin$ ) | زَكِّة |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| مُنْكَرِ | The rule | رُنّة |
| نصَبٌ | Lofty place, palace | صرّحٌ |
| نَفِد | Game, (hunt) | صيلّ |
| 'نهْرٌ (ج) أهفارُ | Good, virtuous | طيّ |
|  | To intend | عَمَدِ |

## EXERCISES

## I. Translate the following:

 الصُغْرى (name of a spot) وارمِ سَبعَ جَمَراتٍ (pebbles) صَغِيراتٍ r. بَاذكُرْ ربَبكَ اذا نَسيتَ وقُل رَبِّ زِدنى (increase for me) عِلماُ (الآية) r. (because of) نَسِيُتم رِقَاءَ يَو مِكُم هذا إِنَا نَسِيناكُمُم (الآية) ع. ولاَ تَنْسَ نَصِيبَكُ (share) مِن الدُّنيا (الآية)
ه. (إن الّذين آمنُوا وعمَلِوا الصالحلات) رَضِىَ اللّه عَنهـم ورَضُوا عنه. ذلك لِمَن خَشَيَ رُبَّه (الآية)
. 7 أَرَضِيتُم بِالَحياةِ الدُّنيا مِن (instead of) الآخرِةِّ؟ (الآية)

 (الآية)
( ६ ₹ -الناتص-يائي)


- (الآية)
- ا. إنَّما يَخْذَى اللَّ مِن عِبادِهِ العُلَماءُ (الآية) ومَن أظلْلُمُ مِمَّن مَنَعَ مَساجِدَ اللَّهِ أن يُذْكَرَ فِيها اِسْمْهُ وسعَعَ (strived) في

خرابها (destruction)؟ (الآية)
 بِغَيْرِ نَفْسٍ (killed without retaliation) - (الآية) r ا. (قَالَ موسى) لَقَدْ لَقِيْنا مِن سَفَرِنا هذا نَصبَا (hardship) - (الآية)

६ ا. ما عِنْدَكم يَنْفَدُ وما عِندَ اللّهِ باق (الآية)
 17. لَهُم (أَىْ: لِلصّالِحِينَ) جَنّاتٌ تَجْرِى مِن تَحْتِها الأنْهارُ خالِّدِين فيها (الآية)

الأخرةِة





(الآية) - me


( ع ع -الناقص-يائي)

هr. إن مِن أشر اطِ الساعةِ أَن يُرْفَغَ العِلمُ، ويُظهرَ الَِهْلُ، ويَفْشُوا (spread) الزِّنا (adultery)، ويُشْرُبُ الخَمرُ (الـديث)

## II. Translate the following:

I have intended to go to my village tomorrow. I shall visit my relatives, meet with old friends, sit down with the village people, hear what they have to say of stories, walk about a little to know who of the people I knew are left in the village and how many are dead, how many of them remember me, how many have forgotten me. A long time has passed since I visited them last. If I do not go I feel they will forget me and I will be the most unlucky of the people with nobody crying when I die and nobody to ever know if I ever walked on the earth in that part of the world.

## III. Change the past tense to present tense in the following:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ا. ويلكم كيف عَصَتْم آباءكم؟ } \\
& \text { r. ب. لِمَ رَمَيتَ العصفورَ بالحجر يا ظالِمُ ؟ } \\
& \text { r. أ دعوتنَّ الِحِران إلى وليمة أخيكن؟ } \\
& \text { ع. لا يَخْفي على اللهُ شيء في الأرض ولا في السماء } \\
& \text { ه. } \\
& \text { 7 } 7 \text { أَلْيِتِ صديقتكِ في الكتبة يا خديبَ؟ } \\
& \text { المذنبون بَكَوا من خشية العذاب } \\
& \text { هالا رَعَيتِ حق الأبوين يا سُعادُ ! . . } \\
& \text { 9. هـ رضين .ما قسم الله تعالى } \\
& \text { • ا. التن معيتن في عمل الحير } \\
& \text { ll ال القا قضى القاضي إلاّ بالعدل } \\
& \text { نساء القرية أوَينَ إلى ظلِّ شَجرةَ في الظهيرة } \\
& \text { 「 ا } 1 \text { ه }
\end{aligned}
$$

(؟ ؛ -الناتص-يائي)

## عا.


7 1 ا. قالت المعلمة للطالبة عَفَوتُ عنكِ مذه المرَّة!
سألتُ المادمات: لِمَ رميتنَّ القُمامة في الثـارع؟ .IV I^. أنــيتم نصائحَ أبويكم؟ 19. 19 طَوَيتُ الاوراق ووضعَتُها في الدر

تا.Y. تلا الامامُ سورة الكافرون في الر كعة الأولى وسورة الإخلاص في الثانية سأل الاستاذ التلميذَ لِمَ مَحَوْتَ ما كَبـَّ؟

أي سورة تَلَوتِ يا كلثومُ؟



 لم مشَيتِ في الشُمس يا فاطمة؟
 Yq. سألتُ المادمتين: أُطوَيتما الملابس اليت كَوَيُتما؟

## IV. Write the complete table as given below for the word جرى

| مفعول | فاعل | في | أمر | مضارع | ماضي |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

## الْمْثَنَّى، جعُُ المذكِر السالمِ وجعُ المؤنثِ السالِمِ

(ا) المثنى
(Dual)

## Clues:

In actual fact you have already learnt this part of the present lesson. How does

It has been pointed out earlier that if there is an `aamil (causative agent: عامل ) which demands a fat-haa or a kasra on a dual noun, then it is done by changing

 it should have a fat-haa.
And, if the dual happens to be a nضاف then, it loses its iso. Consider for



| Leave the two doors open. | أَتُركِ البأَيَيْن مغتوحين | The two doors are open. | البابان مفتوحان | 1 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| I went near the two tall trees. | دَنوتُ من الشُجرتين الطويلتين | The two trees are tall. | الشجر تان طويلتان | r |
| Surely, the two boys who visited us have returned. |  | The two boys who visited us returned. | رَجعَ الولدانِ <br> اللذَان زَارَانا | $r$ |
| Surely, these two girls will go to the park | إنْ هآيَنِ الِبنْتِن | These two girls are laughing. | عاتان البِّتان | $\varepsilon$ |

(0 ع -المثنت، جمع المذكر السالم و جمع المونت السا

| /garden. | تَذهبان إلى المديقة |  | تضْخْكان |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| These two are of those who forbid the wrong. | هذان مِن ناهَي عن المنكر | These two are forbidding the wrong. | هذان نَاهِيان عَن الْمُنْكر | - |

## (ب) جمعُ المذكرِ السالِمِ <br> (Masculine Plural Perfect)

## Rules:

When it comes to masculine plurals which are made by adding $\quad$ g to the noun in singular, then, the way to indicate a fat-haa or kasra is to change the , to a صادقون becomes . So that صادقين .

The rule about a جهع المذكر السالم losing its if it happens to be a مضاف



الأمثلة:

| So, success is for the truthful | فالفوز لِلصًادقين | The truthful succeeded | نَجح الصادقون | 1 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| We met those who were absent | لَقَيْنا الغائبِينَ | Those who were absent have presented (themselves) | حضر الغائبون | r |
| Those who are absent are sick |  | إن الغائبيّن مريضان |  |  |
| The people were unheeding of Allah's punishment . |  | كان الناسُ غافلين عن عقابِ اللّهِ |  | $\varepsilon$ |
| The residents of this place are always in the streets. |  |  |  | - |
| Allah will not accept the deed of the corrupt in religion until they repent. |  | إن اللّه لا يَقْبَلُ عَمَلَ الفاسِلِينَ حَّىيُتُوبُوْا |  | 7 |

(Feminine Plural Perfect)

## Rules:

Giving a fat-haa or a kasrah (a noun never has a sukoon/jazm) is all the more simple when we are dealing with همُ لُمؤنَثِ السًآلٍ , i.e., those feminine nouns that are made by removing the $;$ of the feminine plural perfect, and adding in place مؤمِنة becomes مؤمنات . So that .
How are the harakaat shown? Simple: in all cases the has a kasrah (and
 because of إنُ but rather مؤمناتِ alone.

(0 - المثنت، جمع المذكر السالم و جمع المونث السالم)

| Shoulder | كتف | Cheek | خَا |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Ankle | ك | Head | راس |
| Unable | عَجزَ | Knee | ر'كبْة |
| Palm | كفٌ | Beautified, adorned | زَيَّنَ |
| Elbow | مرْفْق" | Forearm | ساعِد |
| To chew | مَضْغ | Calf | ساقٌ |
| Forehead | ناصِيِّ | To prostrate oneself | لـحَدَ |
| Speech/talk | 'نُقِّ | To subjugate | لـِّرَّ |
| To speak out | نُطِّ | Tooth | سِنٌ (ج) أسنان |
| Face | وجه | Hair | شعر |
| To bear (burden) | وزَرْ | Lip | شَفَ |
| Wrist | مِعْصَمْ | To smell | ش |
| To wonder | حارَ | End | طرف |
| To invent/find | وَجَدَ | Nail | ظفرٌ (ج) أظافر |
|  |  | Possessor of great bounty | ذو الفضْلِ العَظِيم |

## EXERCISES

## I. Translate the following:

## الإنسان

الإنسان ذوحياة (a living creature)، ذو نُطقٍ (talk) وبيانٍ (speech)، له رأس"

(0 ع -المثني، جمع المذكر السالْ و بمع المؤنث السـالم)
 وأسنان ينطِق باللّسان ويمضَغُ الطعامَ بالأسنانِ وله يدان يعمل بِما وين اليدين جعل الله له كَفْن (palms) ورعِصْمَيْن (wrists) وساعَدَيْن (forearms) ومرْفَقَيْن (elbows)

 يشاء، وفيهما قَدَمان (feet) و كَعْبَان (ankles) وساقان (calves) ورُكبَتان (knees) وفَجِذان (thighs) وله ظَهْرٌ وبُطْن.



 (وليس بعجيب أنه يأكلُ كثيرا) - وِلْمرأةِ بالإضَافةِ: الرَّحمُ الذى يحمل الجَنِينَ .(fetus)

ومِن أهمٌّ الأعضاء لَهُ عُضْوان: القلبُ واللسان - يَصْلَح reform/become)



 العُقولُ ويعملُ بُقوتهِ اعمالاً يَعحِزُ (unable) عَنْهَا سائرُ الْخَلْقِ.
وَيُعْرفُ الإِنسانُ بأسماءٍ عديدةٍ (several). فهو حِنينٌ (embryo/fetus) ما دامَ


(0 ع -المثني، جمع المذكر السا لم و جمع المؤنث السالم)

مُراهقٌ (teenager/adolescent)، ثُ فَتَّ، ثُ شابٌّ (young man) من عِشرين سنةً إلى
 (Allah is the One whose help is شيخ، وأخيرا هُرٌٌِ (senile)، والله المستعانُ soul) sought.)

## II. Translate the following:



## III. Translate the following:

1. See then what was the end of the liars.
2. We have found most of them corrupt.
3. He told the fasting women that they should speak only the good (things).
4. In earlier times even women were narrators.
5. The two girls were in the company of pious women.
(0 ع -المثني، جمع المذكر السالم و همع المؤنت السالم)

## IV. Translate the following:

 وَكَّا سَمِعَ يَعْوُبُ الْقِصَّةَ عَلِمَ أَنْ لِلَّهِ يَداً في ذَلِكَ وَأَنَّ اللهُ مُمْتَحِنُهُ
 لاَ يَفْتَعُهُ في ابْتْنِّنِ
إنْ اللهُ لاَ يَفْجَعُهُ في ابْنَيْنِ كَيُو سُفَ وَبْنَيْامِيْنْ.
إِنْ لِلْهِ في ذَلِكَ يَدًا خَفِيَّةٍ
إِنْ لِلَّهِ في ذَلِكَ حِكْمَةٍ مَخْفِيَةً".





## The Best of Stories-8

## 21. To Ya`qub

The brothers were wondering how were they to return to their father! The brothers were thinking what should they say to their father

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { وَتَحيرَ الإِخْوَهُ كَيْفَ يَرْجِعُونَ إِلى أَبيهِمْ؟! } \\
& \text { وَفَكُرَ الإِخْوَهُ مَاذَا يَقُولُونَ لَأَبْهِمْ؟! } \\
& \text { إنَّهُمْ فَجَعُوهُ أَمْس في يُوسُفَ أَفَيْفْجَعُونَهُ الْيوْمَ في بِنياَمِينَ! }
\end{aligned}
$$

(0 ع -المثني، ثمع المذكر السالم و جمع المؤنث السالم)

They had distressed him yesterday, should they distress him today over BinYamin?
As for the eldest of them, he refused to return to Ya`qub. He said to his brothers, "Return to your father and tell him, 'O our father. Your son stole. We have not witnessed but what we know and, we are not custodians over the Unseen."" When Ya`qub heard the story, he knew that Allah had a hand in this and that Allah is trying him.
Yesterday he was distressed on account of Yusuf, and today he is being distressed on account of BinYameen. Surely, Allah will not bring together two hardships on him, Allah will not distress him on account of two sons.
Surely, Allah will not distress him on account of two sons such as Yusuf and BinYameen
Surely, Allah has a hidden hand in this.
Surely, Allah keeps trying His slaves then He gives them joy and blesses them.
Further, the eldest son had also stayed in Egypt. He had refused to return to Kan`aan. Will he be distressed on account of the third also? While he had been distressed on account of two. Surely, this will not happen. Thereat Ya`qub felt assured and said, "It is hoped on Allah that He will bring them to me altogether. Surely, He is the Wise, the Knowing."
(Complete the rest).

(0 ع -المثنى، جمع اللذكر السالم و جمع المونـن السا ل)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { إِلَى مَتَى أُخْفِفِ الأَمْرَ عَنْهُمْ } \\
& \text { وَإِلَى مَتَى أَرَى حَالَّهُمْ } \\
& \text { وَإْلَى متَى لاَ أَرَى أَبى؟؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

لَمْ يَمْلِكْ يُو سُفُ نَفْسَهُ وقَالَ لَهُمْ: "هَلْ عَلِمْتُمْ مَا فَعَلْتُمْ بُيو سُفَ وَأَخْيهِ إذْ أَنْتٌم جَاهِلُونَ."
 سُبْانَ الله! هَلْ يُوسُفُ حَيٌ أَمَا مَاتَ في الْبْرُ

هُوْ الُّذِى عَلَى خَزَائِنِ الأَرْضِ؟
هُوَ الَّذِى كَانَ يَأْمُرُ لَنَا بِالطَّعَامِ؟



 قَالُوا تَاللهُ لَقَدْ آَرَكَكَ اللهُ عَلَيْنا وَإِنْ كُنًا لَخَاطِيِينَ. "
 (من الكتاب: قَصَصُ النبِيّن - لأبي الحسن علي الندوي - الجزء الأول، مع تصريف

بمـيط

## مَعاني الكَكِماتِ البَديدةِ

grace
surge
renewed
or or or my pain
يَا أَسْىَى
(0ع -المثن، جمع المذكر السالم و جمع المؤنث السالم)
has been hidden

O God!
did a good turn
is fearful/god-
conscious
those that do
good
gave you
preference
those who committed error

| أخْفْ | blamed him | لاَاْهُ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| يَا سَالْمُ | my extreme anguish | بَبِّى |
| مَنّ | despair | الْيَأْسِ |
| يتّقِ | hope | رَجَاء |
| الْحُحْـِنْ | try ever harder | يَجْتٌهُولو1 |
| آَكُركَ | lose hope | يَقْنَوُ |
| خَاطِينَ | their poverty | فَقْهُمْمْ |
|  | their hardship | مُصِيبَتَهُمْ |


[^0]:    Who is the (man) whose name is Muhammad?
    He whose name is Muhammad is a
    He whose name is Muhammad
    Messenger of Allah and his slave.
    مَن اللّذِيْ اِسْمُهُ مُحَمَّكُّ
    الذِي راسـمهُ هُحمدُ هو رسول الله
    وَعَبْلُهُ

